

# On the Soundness of the Translation of *MiniMaple* to Why3ML\*

Muhammad Taimoor Khan  
Doktoratskolleg Computational Mathematics  
and  
Research Institute for Symbolic Computation  
Johannes Kepler University  
Linz, Austria  
`Muhammad.Taimoor.Khan@risc.jku.at`

February 3, 2014

## Abstract

In this paper, we first introduce the soundness statements for the various constructs of *MiniMaple* and then give the corresponding proofs for the soundness of the most interesting syntactic domains of *MiniMaple*, i.e. command sequences, assignment statements, conditionals and while-loops.

---

\*The research was funded by the Austrian Science Fund (FWF): W1214-N15, project DK10.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Overview of the Soundness</b>	<b>4</b>
2.1	Semantic Domains . . . . .	4
2.1.1	For Why3 . . . . .	5
2.1.2	For MiniMaple . . . . .	5
2.2	Auxiliary Functions and Predicates . . . . .	5
2.3	Soundness Statements . . . . .	6
2.4	Proof of Soundness . . . . .	9
2.4.1	Command Sequence . . . . .	9
2.4.2	Conditional and Assignment . . . . .	16
2.4.3	While-loop . . . . .	16
2.5	Lemmas . . . . .	28
2.6	Definitions . . . . .	28
2.7	Why3 Semantics . . . . .	28
2.8	Derivations . . . . .	28
<b>3</b>	<b>Conclusions and Future Work</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>29</b>
	<b>Appendices</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>A</b>	<b>Semantic Algebras</b>	<b>30</b>
A.1	For <i>MiniMaple</i> . . . . .	30
A.1.1	Truth Values . . . . .	30
A.1.2	Numeral Values . . . . .	30
A.1.3	Environment Values . . . . .	30
A.1.4	State Values . . . . .	30
A.1.5	Semantic Values . . . . .	31
A.1.6	Information Values . . . . .	32
A.1.7	List Values . . . . .	32
A.1.8	Unordered Values . . . . .	32
A.1.9	Tuple Values . . . . .	32
A.1.10	Procedure Values . . . . .	32
A.1.11	Lifted Value domain . . . . .	32
A.2	For Why3 . . . . .	32
A.2.1	Variable Values . . . . .	32
A.2.2	State Values . . . . .	32
A.2.3	Environment Values . . . . .	33
A.2.4	Semantic Values . . . . .	33
A.2.5	Exception Values . . . . .	33
A.2.6	Function Values . . . . .	33
A.2.7	Constant Values . . . . .	33
A.2.8	Declaration Values . . . . .	33
A.2.9	Theory Values . . . . .	33
A.2.10	Why3 Types . . . . .	33
<b>B</b>	<b>Auxiliary Functions and Predicates</b>	<b>34</b>

<b>C</b>	<b>Soundness Statements</b>	<b>39</b>
C.1	For Command Sequence . . . . .	39
C.2	For Command . . . . .	39
C.3	For Expression . . . . .	40
C.4	For Identifier . . . . .	40
C.5	Goal . . . . .	40
<b>D</b>	<b>Proof</b>	<b>41</b>
D.1	Case G1: Soundness of Command Sequence . . . . .	41
D.2	Case G2: Soundness of Command . . . . .	53
D.2.1	Case 1: $C := \text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}$ . . . . .	53
D.2.2	Case 2: $C := I, I_{\text{seq}} := E, E_{\text{seq}}$ . . . . .	68
D.2.3	Case 3: $C := \text{while } E \text{ do } C_{\text{seq}} \text{ end}$ . . . . .	79
<b>E</b>	<b>Lemmas</b>	<b>95</b>
E.1	For Command_Sequence . . . . .	95
E.2	For Command . . . . .	96
E.3	For Expression . . . . .	100
E.4	Auxiliary Lemmas . . . . .	101
<b>F</b>	<b>Definitions</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>G</b>	<b>Why3 Semantics</b>	<b>105</b>
<b>H</b>	<b>Derivations</b>	<b>107</b>

# 1 Introduction

In order to show that the verification of the translated Why3ML program implies the correctness of the original *MiniMaple* program, we have to prove that the translation preserves the semantics of the program. In detail, we have to prove the equivalence of the denotational semantics of *MiniMaple* programs [4, 3, 2] and the operational semantics of Why3ML programs [1]. We have defined the denotational semantics of *MiniMaple* as a relationship between a pre and a post-state, e.g. the formal semantics of a *MiniMaple* command is defined as:

$$\llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s')$$

such that semantically, in a given type environment  $e$ , the execution of a command  $C$  in a pre-state  $s$  yields a post-state  $s'$ . In [1] a big-step operational semantics of Why3 is defined as a transition:

$$\langle s, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle s', v \rangle$$

which says that in a pre-state  $s$ , the execution of a Why3 expression  $e$  yields a post-state  $s'$  and a value  $v$ . Based on these semantics, we have formulated and proved the soundness statements as discussed later in this document.

The rest of the paper is organized as follows: in Section 2, we discuss the overview of soundness of various *MiniMaple* constructs. Section 3 presents conclusions and future work. Appendix A introduces the semantic domains of *MiniMaple* and Why3 and Appendix B sketches the auxiliary functions and predicates that are later used in the proof of the soundness. Appendix C formulates the corresponding soundness statements while Appendix D gives the actual proof of the soundness statements for the selected constructs. The proof requires some additional lemmas and definitions which are defined in Appendices E and F respectively. The semantics of Why3 is defined in Appendix G while the derivations for the proof of the soundness of while-loop are discussed in Appendix H.

## 2 Overview of the Soundness

In this section, we describe the guidelines to read the different Appendices A, B, C and D with the help of some examples. Each of the following subsections presents the corresponding aforementioned appendix respectively.

### 2.1 Semantic Domains

This section gives the definition of various semantic domains of *MiniMaple* and Why3. We needed to extend some of the semantic domains for *MiniMaple*; while the definition of the corresponding semantic domains of Why3 are deduced from the operational semantics of Why3 as discussed in [1]. In the following, we introduce some critical (w.r.t. proof) semantic domains of *MiniMaple* and Why3, e.g. state and value. For the complete definition of all the semantic domains of Why3 and *MiniMaple*, please see Appendix A.

### 2.1.1 For Why3

The state values of Why3 are defined as a mapping of variables to their corresponding Why3 semantic values.

$$State_w := Variable \rightarrow Value_w$$

where the semantic values is a disjoint domain consists of

$$Value_w = c + Exception_w + Function_w + Void$$

Why3 constants  $c$ , an exception object  $Exception_w$ , a function value  $Function_w$  and  $Void$ . Here the constant  $c$  models all the other values, e.g. booleans, integers, reals, tuples and lists.

### 2.1.2 For MiniMaple

The state values of *MiniMaple* are defined as a tuple of store and data values:

$$State := Store \times Data$$

where the corresponding store and data values are:

$$Store := Variable \rightarrow Value$$

$$Data := Flag \times Exception \times Return$$

The domain of semantic values of *MiniMaple* is also a disjoint domain as:

$$Value = Procedure + List + Tuple + Boolean + Integer + \dots + Symbol$$

In order to make the various proof steps handy, based on the above definitions we have introduced a new semantic domain

$$InfoData = Value + Data + Void$$

which corresponds to the values domain  $Value_m$  of Why3.

## 2.2 Auxiliary Functions and Predicates

This section gives the declaration and (partial) definitions of various critical auxiliary predicates which are very important w.r.t. the proof.

- **equals**  $\subseteq State \times State_w$ : returns *true* only if the given *MiniMaple* state equals the given Why3 state as defined:

$$\begin{aligned} equals(s, t) &\Leftrightarrow \forall i : Identifier, v_m \in Value : i \in dom(s) \wedge \langle i, v_m \rangle \in store(s) \\ &\Rightarrow \exists v_w \in Value_w : \langle i, v_w \rangle \in t \wedge equals(v_m, v_w) \end{aligned}$$

- **equals**  $\subseteq Value \times Value_w$ : returns *true* only if the given *MiniMaple* value equals the given Why3 value as defined:

$$\begin{aligned} equals(v_m, v_w) &\Leftrightarrow \\ &\mathbf{cases} v_m \mathbf{of} \\ &\quad [] isInteger(int_m) \rightarrow \\ &\quad \mathbf{cases} v_w \mathbf{of} \\ &\quad \quad isIntegerw(int_w) \rightarrow valueOf(int_m) = valueOf(inv_w) \end{aligned}$$

```

    [] _ → false
  end
[] isBoolean(bm) →
  cases vw of
    isBooleanw(bw) → valueOf(bm) = valueOf(bw)
    [] _ → false
  end
[] ... → ...
end

```

- **equals**  $\subseteq$  **InfoData**  $\times$  **Value<sub>w</sub>**: returns *true* only if the given state information of *MiniMaple* equals the given Why3 value. This predicate is defined to make our proof handy and easier.

```

equals(d, vw) ⇔
cases d of
  [] isValue(vm) → equals(vm, vw)
  [] isData(dm) →
    IF exceptions(dm) THEN
      cases vw of
        isExceptionw(ew) →
          equals(getId(dm), getId(ew)) ∧ equals(getValue(dm), getValue(ew))
        [] _ → false
      end
    ELSE ... END
  [] isVoid(mv) →
    cases vw of
      isVoid(wv) → true
      [] _ → false
    end
end

```

- **extendsEnv**  $\subseteq$  **Environment<sub>w</sub>**  $\times$  **Expression<sub>w</sub>**  $\times$  **Environment<sub>w</sub>**: returns *true* if the former environment extends the latter environment with the identifiers appearing in the given expression.

```

extendsEnv(e1, c, e2) ⇔
∀ I : Identifier, v ∈ Value, Iseq ∈ Identifier_Sequence, vseq ∈ Value_Sequence :
  <I, v> ∈ e2 ∧ Iseq = extractIdentifiers(c) ∧ vseq = getValues(Iseq, c)
  ⇒ <I, v> ∈ e1 ∧ e1 = e2 ∪ IVSeqtoSet(Iseq, vseq)

```

The definitions of the corresponding predicates *extendsDecl* and *extendsTheory* are the same as of *extendsEnv* defined above. For the definitions of the complete list of functions and predicates, please see Appendix B.

### 2.3 Soundness Statements

In this section, we discuss the formulation of the soundness statements for the translation of *MiniMaple* to Why3. The general goal here is proof:

$\forall Cseq \in \text{Command\_Sequence}, C \in \text{Command}, E \in \text{Expression} :$   
 $\text{Soundness\_cseq}(Cseq) \wedge \text{Soundness\_c}(C) \wedge \text{Soundness\_e}(E)$

where

- **Soundness\_cseq  $\subseteq$  Command.Sequence:** defines the soundness statement for a *MiniMaple* command sequence as below:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Soundness\_cseq}(Cseq) \Leftrightarrow \\
& \forall em \in \text{Environment}, cw \in \text{Expression}_w, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}_w, \\
& \quad dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}_w, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}_w : \\
& \quad \text{wellTyped}(em, Cseq) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \text{T}[\![Cseq]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \text{wellTyped}(cw, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', cw, ew) \wedge \\
& \quad \text{extendsDecl}(dw', cw, dw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', cw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w : \langle t', cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, dm \in \text{InfoData} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw)
\end{aligned}$$

In detail, the soundness statement for the command sequence  $Cseq$  states that

- if a command sequence  $Cseq$  translates to Why3 expression  $cw$  such that various predicates holds for  $Cseq$ , e.g. well-typeness then,
  - various predicates also hold for the corresponding translated expression  $cw$ , e.g. extension of the declarations  $\text{extendsDecl}$  and theory  $\text{extendsTheory}$  and
  - if for arbitrary Why3 states  $t$  and  $t'$ , execution of the translated expression  $cw$  in state  $t$  yields to a post-state  $t'$  and a value  $vw$  then,
  - there are corresponding *MiniMaple* states  $s$  and  $s'$  such that states  $s$  and  $t$  are equal and execution of a command sequence  $Cseq$  in this state  $s$  yields to a state  $s'$  and
  - if for arbitrary *MiniMaple* states  $s$  and  $s'$ , corresponding states  $s$  and  $t$  are equal; moreover, with a given environment  $e$  execution of  $Cseq$  in a pre-state  $s$  yields a post-state  $s'$  and  $dm$  is the state information of  $s'$  then,
  - the corresponding post-states  $s'$  and  $t'$  are equals and also the corresponding values  $dm$  and  $vw$  are equal.
- **Soundness\_c  $\subseteq$  Command:** defines the soundness statement for a *MiniMaple* command as below:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Soundness\_c}(C) \Leftrightarrow \\
& \forall em \in \text{Environment}, cw \in \text{Expression}_w, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}_w, \\
& \quad dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}_w, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}_w : \\
& \quad \text{wellTyped}(em, C) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[[C]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', cw, ew) \wedge \\
& \quad extendsDecl(dw', cw, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw', cw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t', cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge [[C]](e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad [[C]](e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)
\end{aligned}$$

The formulation of the soundness statement for a command  $C$  is very similar to the soundness of command sequence  $Cseq$  as stated above.

- *Soundness\_e*  $\subseteq$  *Expression*: defines the soundness statement for a *MiniMaple* expression as below:

$$\begin{aligned}
& Soundness\_e(E) \Leftrightarrow \\
& \forall em \in Environment, expw \in Expression_w, ew, ew' \in Environment_w, \\
& \quad dw, dw' \in Decl_w, tw, tw' \in Theory_w : \\
& \quad wellTyped(em, E) \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \langle expw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \\
& \quad wellTyped(expw, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', expw, ew) \wedge \\
& \quad extendsDecl(dw', expw, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw', expw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t', cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge [[E]](e)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge [[E]](e)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)
\end{aligned}$$

In detail, the soundness statement for the expression  $E$  states that

- if an expression  $E$  translates to Why3 expression  $expw$  such that various predicates holds for  $E$ , e.g. well-typeness then,
- various predicates also hold for the corresponding translated expression  $expw$ , e.g. extension of the declarations  $extendsDecl$  and theory  $extendsTheory$  and
- if for arbitrary Why3 states  $t$  and  $t'$ , execution of the translated expression  $expw$  in state  $t$  yields to a post-state  $t'$  and a value  $vw$  then,
- there are corresponding *MiniMaple* states ( $s$  and  $s'$ ) and a value  $vm$  such that the states  $s$  and  $t$  are equal and evaluation of the expression  $E$  in this state  $s$  yields to a state  $s'$  and a value  $vm$  and
- if for arbitrary *MiniMaple* states ( $s$  and  $s'$ ) and value  $vm$ , corresponding states  $s$  and  $t$  are equal; and with a given environment  $e$  evaluation of  $E$  in a pre-state  $s$  yields a post-state  $s'$  and a value  $vm$  then,
- the corresponding post-states  $s'$  and  $t'$  are equals and also the corresponding values  $vm$  and  $vw$  are equal.



For further technical details and definitions of other predicates used in the soundness statements, please see Appendix B.

## 2.4 Proof of Soundness

In this section, we sketch the structure and strategy for the proof of the soundness of the selected *MiniMaple* constructs, i.e. command sequence and conditional, assignment and while-loop commands. In order to carry the proof, we have slightly modified the grammar for *MiniMaple* as shown below:

```

Cseq := C | C;Cseq // originally was EMPTY | C;Cseq
C := ... | if E then Cseq else Cseq end if | while E do Cseq end do | ...
E := ... | E and E | E or E | E = E | E <E | E ≤ E | E >E | E ≥ E | not E | ...
Eseq := E | E;Eseq // originally was EMPTY | E;Eseq

```

We prove the goal (as formulated in Section 2.3) by structural induction on  $Cseq$ ,  $C$  and  $E$  whose formal grammar rules are defined. Also the rules for the questioned semantics of Why3 are defined by “ $_ \longrightarrow _$ ” notation as introduced in Section 1 and in [1]. Hence, the goal splits into the following subgoals:

1.  $Soundness\_cseq(Cseq)$
2.  $Soundness\_c(C)$
3.  $Soundness\_e(E)$

In the following subsection, we give the sketch of the proof of some of the structural cases of  $Cseq$  and  $C$ . Based on our proof strategy, the corresponding proof for the rest of the constructs is an easy exercise to rehearse.

### 2.4.1 Command Sequence

As per the grammar for command sequence  $Cseq$  above, there are two cases. In this section, we discuss the proof of the complex case, i.e. when  $Cseq$  is  $C;Cseq$ . In order to prove, first we expand the definition of the goal  $Soundness\_cseq(Cseq)$ , where  $Cseq = C;Cseq$  and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall em \in Environment, cw \in Expression_w, ew, ew' \in Environment_w, \\
& \quad dw, dw' \in Decl_w, tw, tw' \in Theory_w : \\
& \quad wellTyped(em, C; Cseq) \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[C; Cseq](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', cw, ew) \wedge \\
& \quad extendsDecl(dw', cw, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw', cw, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t', cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{T}[C; Cseq](e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \mathbb{T}[C; Cseq](e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)
\end{aligned}$$

Let  $em, cw, em, ew', dw, dw', tw, tw'$ , be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$wellTyped(em, C; Cseq) \quad (2.4.1.1)$$

$$consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.1.2)$$

$$\langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[C; Cseq](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.1.3)$$

We show:

- $wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw')$  (a)
- $extendsEnv(ew', cw, ew)$  (b)
- $extendsDecl(dw', cw, dw)$  (c)
- $extendsTheory(tw', cw, tw)$  (d)
- $\forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t', cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $\exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge$   
 $\forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge$   
 $\llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s')$   
 $\Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)$  (e)

In the following, we prove each of the above five goals.

### Goal (a)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq1$ ) with

$cseq$  as  $C; Cseq$ ,  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $e$  as  $cw$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  and get

$$wellTyped(em, C; Cseq) \wedge \langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[C; Cseq](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw')$$

This goal follows from assumptions (2.4.1.1) and (2.4.1.3).

### Goal (b)

By the definition of the translation function ( $D2$ ) of  $T[C; Cseq]$ , there are  $e1, e2, ew'', dw'', tw''$  for which

$$\langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[C; Cseq](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.1.4)$$

where

$$cw = e1; e2 \quad (2.4.1.5)$$

$$\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[C](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.1.6)$$

$$em' = Env(em, C) \quad (2.4.1.7)$$

$$\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[Cseq](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad (2.4.1.8)$$

Here  $e1; e2$  is a syntactic sugar for the Why3 semantic construct **let**  $_ = e1$  **in**  $e2$ .

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq3$ ) with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $C$  as  $C$  and  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$   
from which the following holds

$$wellTyped(em, C) \tag{2.4.1.9}$$

$$em' = Env(em, C) \tag{2.4.1.10}$$

$$wellTyped(em', Cseq) \tag{2.4.1.11}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $C$  with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $ew$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  
 $tw'$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em, C) \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[C](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & wellTyped(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \\ & extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\ & \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t', e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge [C](e)(s, s') \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\ & [C](e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ & \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{A} \end{aligned}$$

From (A) and assumptions (2.4.1.9), (2.4.1.2) and (2.4.1.6), it follows that

$$extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew) \tag{2.4.1.12}$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq4$ ) with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $C$  as  $C$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $e1$  as  
 $e1$ ,  $e2$  as  $e2$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$ ,  $ew''$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw''$  as  
 $dw''$ ,  $tw''$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[C](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = Env(em, C) \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[Cseq](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow & consistent(em', dw'', dw'', tw'') \tag{B} \end{aligned}$$

From (B) with assumptions (2.4.1.6), (2.4.1.6), (2.4.1.8) and (2.4.1.2), it follows that

$$consistent(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \tag{2.4.1.13}$$

We instantiate the induction assumption for  $Cseq$  with  
 $em$  as  $em'$ ,  $ew$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew''$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw''$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  
 $tw''$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em', Cseq) \wedge consistent(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[Cseq](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & wellTyped(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \\ & extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'') \wedge extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{C}
\end{aligned}$$

From (C) with assumptions (2.4.1.11), (2.4.1.13) and (2.4.1.8), it follows that

$$extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') \tag{2.4.1.14}$$

From (2.4.1.5), we can re-write the goal (b) as

$$extendsEnv(ew', e1; e2, ew)$$

In order to prove this goal, we instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq2$ ) with  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $C$  as  $C$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $ew''$  as  $ew''$ ,  $e1$  as  $e1$ ,  $e2$  as  $e2$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $dw''$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$ ,  $tw''$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& wellTyped(em, C; Cseq) \wedge \langle e1; e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T\llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad [extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') \Rightarrow extendsEnv(ew', e1; e2, ew)] \wedge \\
& \quad [extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'') \Rightarrow extendsDecl(dw', e1; e2, dw)] \wedge \\
& \quad extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'') \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \quad extendsTheory(tw', e1; e2, tw) \tag{D}
\end{aligned}$$

The goal (b) follows from (D) and assumptions (2.4.1.1), (2.4.1.4), (2.4.1.5), (2.4.1.12) and (2.4.1.14). Hence proved.

## Goals (c) and (d)

The goals (c) and (d) are very similar to goal (b) and thus can be easily rehearsed based on the proof of goal (b).

## Goal (e)

Let  $t, t', cw, vw$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\langle t, cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \tag{2.4.1.15}$$

From (2.4.1.5), and Why3 semantics, we know

$$cw = e1; e2 \sim \mathbf{let\_} = e1 \mathbf{line2} \tag{2.4.1.16}$$

From Why3 semantics ( $com - s$ ), we get

$$\langle t, \mathbf{let\_} = e1 \mathbf{line2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \tag{2.4.1.17}$$

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle \tag{2.4.1.18}$$

for some  $t''$ , where  $vw'$  is not an exception

$$\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \tag{2.4.1.19}$$

for some  $t''$ .

We show:

$$\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (e.a)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \quad (e.b) \end{aligned}$$

In the following, we prove these two sub-goals (e.a) and (e.b) of goal (e).

### Sub-Goal (e.a)

To prove this goal, we define

$$s := constructs(t) \quad (2.4.1.20)$$

We split the original goal (e.a) and show the following sub-goals:

$$equals(s, t) \quad (e.a.1)$$

$$\llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (e.a.2)$$

Now, we prove the following two further sub-goals (e.a.1) and (e.a.2) in order to prove the goal (e.a).

### Sub-Goal (e.a.1)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s$  and  $t$  as  $t$  to get

$$s = construct(t) \Rightarrow equals(s, t) \quad (E)$$

The sub-goal (e.a.1) follows from (E) with assumption (2.4.1.20). Hence proved.

### Sub-Goal (e.a.2)

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $C$  with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $cw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} wellTyped(em, C) \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T \llbracket C \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow \\ wellTyped(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \\ extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\ \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t', e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow \\ \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge \\ \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\ \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \quad (F) \end{aligned}$$

From (F) with assumptions (2.4.1.9), (2.4.1.2), (2.4.1.6), we get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t', e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{F.1}
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula (F.1) with  $t$  as  $t$  and  $t'$  as  $t''$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t, t'' \in State_w, vw' \in Value_w : \langle t', e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t'') \wedge equals(dm, vw') \tag{F.2}
\end{aligned}$$

From (F.2) with assumption (2.4.1.18), we know

$$\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \tag{F.3}$$

By instantiating (F.3) with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s''$ , we know that there is  $s, s''$  s.t.

$$\llbracket C \rrbracket(em)(s, s'') \tag{2.4.1.21}$$

We instantiate the induction assumption for  $Cseq$  with  $em$  as  $em'$ ,  $ew$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw''$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw''$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& wellTyped(em', Cseq) \wedge consistent(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad wellTyped(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \\
& \quad extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'') \wedge extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \quad \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{G}
\end{aligned}$$

From (G) with assumptions (2.4.1.11), (2.4.1.13) and (2.4.1.8), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw') \tag{G.1}
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the formula (G.1) with  $t$  as  $t''$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t'', t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge \\
& \quad \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t'') \wedge \\
& \quad \llbracket C \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw') \tag{G.2}
\end{aligned}$$

From (G.2) and assumption (2.4.1.19), we get

$$\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t'') \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \tag{G.3}$$

By instantiating (G.3) with  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ , we know that there is  $s'', s'$  s.t.

$$\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s'', s') \tag{2.4.1.22}$$

This sub-goal (e.a.2), which is a definition of the semantics of the command sequence  $C$ ;  $Cseq$  follows from the assumptions (2.4.1.21), (2.4.1.22) and (2.4.1.7).

Hence sub-goals (e.a.1) and (e.a.2) are proved thus the sub-goal (e.a) is proved.

### Sub-Goal (e.b)

Let  $s, s', dm$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$equals(s, t) \tag{2.4.1.23}$$

$$\llbracket C; Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \tag{2.4.1.24}$$

$$dm = infoData(s') \tag{2.4.1.25}$$

We define:

$$s' := constructs(t') \tag{2.4.1.26}$$

$$vw := constructs(dm) \tag{2.4.1.27}$$

To prove this goal, we split the original goal (e.b) and show the following sub-goals:

$$equals(s', t') \tag{e.b.1}$$

$$equals(dm, vw) \tag{e.b.2}$$

In the following, we prove the sub-goals (e.b.1) and (e.b.2) in order to prove the original goal (e.b).

### Sub-Goal (e.b.1)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = constructs(t') \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \tag{I}$$

This sub-goal follows from (I) with assumption (2.4.1.26).

### Sub-Goal (e.b.2)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq6$ ) with  $v$  as  $vw$ ,  $v'$  as  $dm$  to get

$$vw = \text{constructs}(dm) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(dm, vw) \quad (\text{J})$$

This sub-goal follows from (J) with assumption (2.4.1.27).

Consequently, the goal (e.b) follows from (e.b.1) and (e.b.2); also the goal (e) follows from goals (e.a) and (e.b).

Thus the soundness statement for command sequence follows from sub-goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e).

### 2.4.2 Conditional and Assignment

The proof structure respective strategy for the soundness of a conditional command is the same as shown above for the command sequence. However, the proof of a conditional command later splits into two cases, when the conditional expression  $E$  evaluates to *true* or *false*. The soundness proof for the assignment command is also similar to the soundness proof for a command sequence thus can be easily rehearsed. The complete proof for the conditional and assignment command is shown in the Appendix D.

### 2.4.3 While-loop

The goal for the soundness of command can be re-stated for the while-loop command as:

$$\begin{aligned} & \forall em \in \text{Environment}, e1, e2 \in \text{Expression}_w, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}_w, \\ & \quad dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}_w, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}_w : \\ & \quad \text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end}) \text{ mathit} \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \quad \langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ & \Rightarrow \\ & \quad \text{wellTyped}(\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) \wedge \\ & \quad \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) \wedge \\ & \quad \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w, : \langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \Rightarrow \\ & \quad \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [\text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end}](em)(s, s') \wedge \\ & \quad \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, dm \in \text{InfoData} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\ & \quad [\text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end}](em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \end{aligned}$$

Let  $em, e1, e2, ew, ew', dw, dw', tw, tw', dm$  and  $vw$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end}) \quad (2.4.3.1)$$

$$\text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.3.2)$$

$$\langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end}](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.3.3)$$

By expanding the definition of (2.4.3.3), we know

$$\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[E](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad (2.4.3.4)$$

$$em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \quad (2.4.3.5)$$



$$\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[Cseq](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad (2.4.3.6)$$

We show:

- $wellTyped(\mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, ew', dw', tw')$  (a)
- $extendsEnv(ew', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, ew)$  (b)
- $extendsDecl(dw', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, dw)$  (c)
- $extendsTheory(tw', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, tw)$  (d)
- $\forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w : \langle t', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $\exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge$   
 $\forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge$   
 $\llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s')$   
 $\Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)$  (e)

In the following, we prove each of the above five goals.

### Goal (a)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c1$ ) with

$c$  as  $\mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end}$ ,  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $e$  as  $cw$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  and get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em, \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end}) \wedge \\ & \langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ & \Rightarrow wellTyped(\mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, ew', dw', tw') \end{aligned}$$

This goal follows from assumptions (2.4.3.1) and (2.4.3.3).

### Goal (b)

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c9$ ) with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em, \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end}) \Rightarrow \\ & wellTyped(em, E) \wedge em' = Env(em, E) \wedge wellTyped(em', Cseq) \end{aligned}$$

From the above formula with assumptions (2.4.3.1), we know

$$wellTyped(em, E) \quad (2.4.3.7)$$

$$em' = Env(em, E) \quad (2.4.3.8)$$

$$wellTyped(em', Cseq) \quad (2.4.3.9)$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c10$ ) with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $ew''$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $dw''$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$ ,  $tw''$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[\llbracket E \rrbracket](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = Env(em, E) \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \\ & \Rightarrow consistent(em', dw'', dw'', tw'') \end{aligned}$$

From the above formula with assumptions (2.4.3.4), (2.4.3.5), (2.4.3.6), (2.4.3.2), we know

$$\text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad (2.4.3.10)$$

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $E$  with  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $expw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\![E]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \\ & \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\ & \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w, : \langle t', e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{E}(em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\ & \mathbb{E}(em)(s, s', vm) \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \quad (\text{A}) \end{aligned}$$

From (A) and assumptions (2.4.3.9), (2.4.3.2) and (2.4.3.6), it follows that

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \quad (2.4.3.11)$$

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $Cseq$  with  $em$  as  $em'$ ,  $ew$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew''$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw''$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw''$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\![Cseq]\!](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \\ & \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\ & \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w, : \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{E}[Cseq](em)(s, s') \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, dm \in \text{InfoData} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\ & \mathbb{E}[Cseq](em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \quad (\text{B}) \end{aligned}$$

From (B) and assumptions (2.4.3.9), (2.4.3.2) and (2.4.3.6), it follows that

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \quad (2.4.3.12)$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c11$ ) with  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $e1$  as  $e1$ ,  $e2$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $ew''$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $dw''$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$ ,  $tw''$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em, \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end}) \wedge \\ & \langle \mathbf{while} e1 \mathbf{do} e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\![\mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end}]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle &= \mathbb{T}[\![E]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
em' &= Env(em, E) \wedge \\
\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle &= \mathbb{T}[\![Cseq]\!](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
\Rightarrow & \\
& [\textit{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \textit{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'')] \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \textit{extendsEnv}(ew', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, ew) \wedge \\
& [\textit{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \textit{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'')] \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \textit{extendsDecl}(dw', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, dw) \wedge \\
& [\textit{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \textit{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'')] \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \textit{extendsTheory}(tw', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, tw) \tag{C}
\end{aligned}$$

From (C) with assumptions (2.4.3.1), (2.4.3.3), (2.4.3.4), (2.4.3.5), (2.4.3.6), (2.4.3.11) and (2.4.3.12), we know

$$\textit{extendsEnv}(ew', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2, ew) \tag{2.4.3.13}$$

which is goal (b). Hence proved.

### Goals (c) and (d)

The goals (c) and (d) are very similar to goal (b) above and thus can be easily rehearsed based on the proof of goal (b).

### Goal (e)

Let  $t, t', cw, vw$  be arbitrary but fixed s.t.

We assume:

$$\langle t, \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \tag{2.4.3.14}$$

We show:

$$\exists s, s' \in State : \textit{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \tag{e.a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData : \textit{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\
\llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \textit{infoData}(s') \\
\Rightarrow \textit{equals}(s', t') \wedge \textit{equals}(dm, vw) \tag{e.b}
\end{aligned}$$

The semantics of the classical Why3 while-loop is defined by a complex exception-handling mechanism. Based on the aforementioned semantics, a proof of this goal gets more complicated, thus to avoid this complication, we have derived (in the Appendix H- Derivations) two rules conforming the definition of while-loop semantics which do not involve exceptions anymore. These two derivations are as follows:

$$\frac{\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', false \rangle}{\langle t, \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', void \rangle} \tag{2.4.3.15}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', true \rangle \\
& \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', void \rangle \\
\langle t''', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle & \longrightarrow \langle t', void \rangle \\
\hline
\langle t, \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle & \longrightarrow \langle t', void \rangle
\end{aligned} \tag{2.4.3.16}$$

We prove this goal (e) by rule induction [5] on the operational semantics of while-loop which is defined above by the two derivation rules (2.4.3.15) and (2.4.3.16). By the strategy of principle of rule induction for while-loop, the goal (e) can be re-formulated as:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall t, t' \in State, vw \in Valuew : \langle t, \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow P(t, t', vw) &\quad (e') \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} P(t, t', vw) &\Leftrightarrow \\ [\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket (em)(s, s')] \wedge \\ [\forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData : \\ equals(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket (em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)] &\quad (D-p) \end{aligned}$$

where  $E, Cseq$  and  $em$  are fixed as defined above.

To show goal (e'), based on the principle of rule induction it suffices to show the followings for while-loop for the corresponding derivation rules respectively:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall t, t' \in State, vw \in Valuew, e1 \in Expressionw : \\ \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', false \rangle \Rightarrow P(t, t', vw) &\quad (e.a) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall t, t', t'', t''' \in State, vw \in Valuew, e1, e2 \in Expressionw : \\ \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', true \rangle \wedge \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', void \rangle \wedge \\ \langle t''', \mathbf{while} \ e1 \ \mathbf{do} \ e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', void \rangle \wedge P(t''', t', void) \\ \Rightarrow P(t, t', vw) &\quad (e.b) \end{aligned}$$

In the following, we prove these two sub-goals (e.a) and (e.b) in order to prove the goal (e).

### Sub-Goal (e.a)

We assume:

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', false \rangle \quad (2.4.3.17)$$

We show:

$$P(t, t', vw)$$

By expanding the definition of  $P(t, t', vw)$ , we get

$$[\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket (em)(s, s')] \quad (e.a.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} [\forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData : \\ equals(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} \ E \ \mathbf{do} \ Cseq \ \mathbf{end} \rrbracket (em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw)] &\quad (e.a.2) \end{aligned}$$

In the following, we show the sub-goals (e.a.1) and (e.a.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.a.1)**

We split this goal to show:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \quad (\text{e.a.1.1})$$

$$\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{ seq end} \rrbracket (em)(s, s') \quad (\text{e.a.1.2})$$

We define:

$$s := \text{constructs}(t) \quad (2.4.3.18)$$

$$s' := \text{constructs}(t') \quad (2.4.3.19)$$

$$\text{inValue}(\text{False}) := \text{constructs}(\text{false}) \quad (2.4.3.20)$$

In the following, we prove the sub-goals (e.a.1.1) and (e.a.1.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.a.1.1)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - \text{cseq5}$ ) with  $s$  as  $s$  and  $t$  as  $t$  to get

$$s = \text{construct}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t) \quad (\text{D})$$

The sub-goal (e.a.1.1) follows from (D) with assumption (2.4.3.18). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (e.a.1.2)**

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $E$  with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $expw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = \text{T} \llbracket E \rrbracket (em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \\ & \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\ & \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w, : \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket (em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\ & \llbracket E \rrbracket (em)(s, s', vm) \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \quad (\text{E}) \end{aligned}$$

From (E) and assumptions (2.4.3.9), (2.4.3.2) and (2.4.3.6), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} & \forall t, t' \in \text{State}_w, vw \in \text{Value}_w, : \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket (em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in \text{State}_m, vm \in \text{Value} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \\ & \llbracket E \rrbracket (em)(s, s', vm) \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \quad (\text{E.1}) \end{aligned}$$

We instantiate above formula (E.1) with  
 $t$  as  $t$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'$ ,  $vw$  as  $false$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', false \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \exists s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\
& \forall s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(vm, vw) \qquad (E.2)
\end{aligned}$$

From (E.2) with assumption (2.4.3.17), we get

$$\exists s, s' \in State, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \qquad (E.3)$$

Taking  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ ,  $vm$  as  $inValue(False)$  with (E.3), we know from assumptions (2.4.3.18), (2.4.3.19), (2.4.3.20) and (2.4.3.4) that there is  $s, s', inValue(False)$  and  $E$  for which

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', inValue(False)) \qquad (2.4.3.21)$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c12$ ) with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $s$  as  $s$  and  $s'$  as  $s'$  to get

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', inValue(False)) \Rightarrow \llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \qquad (E.4)$$

The sub-goal (e.a.1.2) follows from (E.4) with assumption (2.4.3.21).  
Consequently, the goal (e.a.1) follows from (e.a.1.1) and (e.a.1.2).

### Sub-Goal (e.a.2)

Let  $s, s', dm, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$equals(s, t) \qquad (2.4.3.22)$$

$$\llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \qquad (2.4.3.23)$$

$$dm = infoData(s') \qquad (2.4.3.24)$$

We define:

$$vw := constructs(dm) \qquad (2.4.3.25)$$

We split the original goal (e.a.2) and show the following sub-goals:

$$equals(s', t') \qquad (e.a.2.1)$$

$$equals(dm, vw) \qquad (e.a.2.2)$$

Now, we prove the following two further sub-goals (e.a.2.1) and (e.a.2.2) in order to prove the goal (e.a.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.a.2.1)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s$  and  $t$  as  $t$  to get

$$s = \text{construct}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t) \quad (\text{F})$$

The sub-goal (e.a.2.1) follows from (F) with assumption (2.4.3.22). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (e.a.2.2)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq6$ ) with  $v$  as  $vm$  and  $v'$  as  $dm$  to get

$$vw = \text{construct}(dm) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(dm, vw) \quad (\text{G})$$

The sub-goal (e.a.2.2) follows from (G) with assumption (2.4.3.25). Hence proved.

Consequently, the goal (e.a.2) follows from (e.a.2.1) and (e.a.2.2). Finally, the goal (e.a) follows from goals (e.a.1) and (e.a.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.b)**

We assume:

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \quad (2.4.3.26)$$

$$\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', \text{void} \rangle \quad (2.4.3.27)$$

$$\langle t''', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \quad (2.4.3.28)$$

$$P(t''', t', \text{void}) \quad (2.4.3.29)$$

We show:

$$P(t, t', vw)$$

By expanding the definition of  $P(t, t', vw)$ , we get

$$[\exists s, s' \in \text{State} : \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s')] \quad (\text{e.b.1})$$

$[\forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData} :$

$$\text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s')$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw)] \quad (\text{e.b.2})$$

We define:

$$s := \text{constructs}(t) \quad (2.4.3.30)$$

$$s'' := \text{constructs}(t'') \quad (2.4.3.31)$$

$$s''' := \text{constructs}(t''') \quad (2.4.3.32)$$

$$\text{inValue}(\text{True}) := \text{constructs}(\text{true}) \quad (2.4.3.33)$$

$$\text{inValue}(\text{Void}) := \text{constructs}(\text{void}) \quad (2.4.3.34)$$

In the following, we prove the sub-goals (e.b.1) and (e.b.2) in order to prove (e.b).

**Sub-Goal (e.b.1)**

We show:

$$equals(s, t) \quad (\text{e.b.1.1})$$

$$\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{ seq end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (\text{e.b.1.2})$$

In the following, we show the sub-goals (e.b.1.1) and (e.b.1.2) to show the goal (e.b.1).

**Sub-Goal (e.b.1.1)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s$  and  $t$  as  $t$  to get

$$s = \text{construct}(t) \Rightarrow equals(s, t) \quad (\text{G})$$

The sub-goal (e.b.1.1) follows from (G) with assumption (2.4.3.30). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (e.b.1.2)**

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $E$  with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $expw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em, E) \wedge consistent(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T \llbracket E \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & wellTyped(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \\ & extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\ & \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \\ & \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \\ & \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(vm, vw) \quad (\text{H}) \end{aligned}$$

From (H) and assumptions (2.4.3.9), (2.4.3.2) and (2.4.3.6), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} & \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow & \\ & \exists s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\ & \forall s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \\ & \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \\ & \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(vm, vw) \quad (\text{H.1}) \end{aligned}$$

We instantiate above formula (H.1) with  $t$  as  $t$ ,  $t'$  as  $t''$ ,  $vw$  as  $true$  to get



$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', true \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \exists s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \wedge \\
& \forall s, s' \in State_m, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \Rightarrow equals(s', t'') \wedge equals(vm, vw) \tag{H.2}
\end{aligned}$$

From (H.2) with assumption (2.4.3.26), we get

$$\exists s, s' \in State, vm \in Value : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s', vm) \tag{H.3}$$

Taking  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s''$ ,  $vm$  as  $inValue(True)$  with (H.3), we know from assumptions (2.4.3.30), (2.4.3.31), (2.4.3.33) and (2.4.3.4) that there is  $s, s'', inValue(True)$  and  $E$  for which

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s'', inValue(True)) \tag{2.4.3.35}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $Cseq$  with  $em$  as  $em'$ ,  $ew$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew''$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw''$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw''$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& wellTyped(em', Cseq) \wedge consistent(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T} \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& wellTyped(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \\
& extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'') \wedge extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\
& \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{I}
\end{aligned}$$

From (I) and assumptions (2.4.3.9), (2.4.3.2) and (2.4.3.6), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
& \forall t, t' \in State_w, vw \in Value_w, : \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(dm) \\
& \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \tag{I.1}
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate above formula (I.1) with  $t$  as  $t''$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'''$ ,  $vw$  as  $void$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', void \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \exists s, s' \in State_m : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge \\
& \forall s, s' \in State_m, dm \in InfoData : equals(s, t) \wedge \\
& \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\
& \Rightarrow equals(s', t''') \wedge equals(dm, void) \tag{I.2}
\end{aligned}$$

From (I.2) with assumption (2.4.3.27), we get

$$\exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (I.3)$$

Taking  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'''$  in the above formula, we know from (9.b), (9.c), (1.a') and (3.b) that

Taking  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'''$  with (I.3), we know from assumptions (2.4.3.31), (2.4.3.32), (2.4.3.8) and (2.4.3.6) that there is  $s''$ ,  $s'''$ ,  $em'$  and  $Cseq$  for which

$$\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s'', s''') \quad (2.4.3.36)$$

By expanding assumption (2.4.3.29), we get

$$\llbracket \exists s, s' \in State : equals(s, t''') \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \rrbracket \quad (J.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \llbracket \forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData : \\ & equals(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ & \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, void) \rrbracket \quad (J.2) \end{aligned}$$

From (J.1), we know there is  $s, s'$  for which

$$equals(s, t''') \quad (2.4.3.37)$$

$$\llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (2.4.3.38)$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $t$  as  $t'''$  to get

$$s = constructs(t''') \Leftrightarrow equals(s, t''') \quad (K)$$

From (K) and assumption (2.4.3.29), we get

$$s = constructs(t''') \quad (2.4.3.39)$$

From assumptions (2.4.3.29) and (2.4.3.31), we can rewrite (2.4.3.37) and (2.4.3.38) as

$$equals(s''', t''') \quad (2.4.3.40)$$

$$\llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s''', s') \quad (2.4.3.41)$$

We instantiate lemma ( $L - c13$ ) with

$em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ ,  $s''$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'''$  as  $s'''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s'', inValue(True)) \wedge em' = Env(em, E) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s'', s''') \\ & \llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s''', s') \\ & \Rightarrow \llbracket \mathbf{while} E \mathbf{do} Cseq \mathbf{end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \quad (L) \end{aligned}$$

The goal (e.b.1.2) follows from (L) with assumptions (2.4.3.35), (2.4.3.8), (2.4.3.36) and (2.4.3.41). Consequently (e.b.1) follows from the proofs of (e.b.1.1) and (e.b.1.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.b.2)**

Let  $s, s', dm, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$equals(s, t) \tag{2.4.3.42}$$

$$[\mathbf{whileEdoCseqend}](em)(s, s') \tag{2.4.3.43}$$

$$dm = infoData(s') \tag{2.4.3.44}$$

We show:

$$equals(s', t') \tag{e.b.2.1}$$

$$equals(dm, vw) \tag{e.b.2.1}$$

We define:

$$s' := constructs(t') \tag{2.4.3.45}$$

$$vw := constructs(dm) \tag{2.4.3.46}$$

In the following, we prove the sub-goals (e.b.2.1) and (e.b.2.2) in order to show the original goal (e.b.2).

**Sub-Goal (e.b.2.1)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq5$ ) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = construct(t') \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \tag{M}$$

The sub-goal (e.b.2.1) follows from (M) with assumption (2.4.3.45).

**Sub-Goal (e.b.2.2)**

We instantiate lemma ( $L - cseq6$ ) with  $v$  as  $vw$ ,  $v'$  as  $dm$  to get

$$vw = constructs(dm) \Rightarrow equals(dm, vw) \tag{N}$$

This sub-goal (e.b.2.2) follows from (N) with assumption (2.4.3.46).

Consequently,

- the goal (e.b.2) follows from (e.b.2.1) and (e.b.2.2);
- the goal (e.b) follows from (e.b.1) and (e.b.2);
- the goal (e) follows from (e.a) and (e.b).

Finally, the soundness of the while-loop command follows from the proofs of goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e).

## 2.5 Lemmas

In Appendix E, we discuss the lemmas for the proof of the soundness statements of command sequence, command and expression. Also some auxiliary lemmas are defined. For the complete definition of the lemmas, please see the corresponding sections of the Appendix E. The lemmas say the absence of internal inconsistencies and are essentially about the well-typing, consistency of environments and the extensions of the corresponding intermediate theory and module declarations.

## 2.6 Definitions

Appendix F includes various definitions required for the proof, e.g. definitions of the translation functions.

## 2.7 Why3 Semantics

Appendix G defines the corresponding big-step operational semantics of Why3ML as introduced in [1].

## 2.8 Derivations

In Appendix H, we give the derivation of the rules for the while-loop command. As mentioned earlier that the semantics of a Why3 while-loop is defined by a complex exception handling mechanism. Therefore, the goal here was to introduce two new rules for the while-loop (i.e. (d.a) and (d.b)), which operate directly on the level of while-loop (without expansion). We also showed that these rules follows from the basic rule calculus, i.e. adding these rules does not change the loop semantics.

# 3 Conclusions and Future Work

In this paper we have sketched the structure and strategy for the soundness statements of the selected constructs of *MiniMaple*, e.g. command sequences, conditional commands, assignment commands and while-loops. The proof was essentially based on structural induction along-with various auxiliary lemmas. However, the proof for the soundness of while-loop required some additional derivations and was proved by rule induction. A proof for some selected cases of expressions is planned as a future goal.

## Acknowledgment

The author cordially thanks Wolfgang Schreiner for his valuable and constructive comments and suggestions throughout this work.

## 4 References

- [1] Filiâtre, Jean-Christophe. Why: an Intermediate Language for Program Verification. TYPES Summer School 2007 – <http://typessummerschool07.cs.unibo.it/>, 2007.
- [2] Muhammad Taimoor Khan. Formal Semantics of a Specification Language for *MiniMaple*. DK Technical Report 2012-06, Research Institute for Symbolic Computation, University of Linz, April 2012.
- [3] Muhammad Taimoor Khan. Formal Semantics of *MiniMaple*. DK Technical Report 2012-01, Research Institute for Symbolic Computation, University of Linz, January 2012.
- [4] Muhammad Taimoor Khan. On the Formal Semantics of *MiniMaple* and its Specification Language. In *Proceedings of Frontiers of Information Technology*, pages 169–174. IEEE Computer Society, 2012.
- [5] Winskel, Glynn. *The Formal Semantics of Programming Languages: An Introduction*. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, USA, 1993.

# Appendices

## A Semantic Algebras

### A.1 For *MiniMaple*

All the syntactic and semantic domains of *MiniMaple* are included. Here we give the definitions of those domains, which are used.

#### A.1.1 Truth Values

**Domain** Boolean = {True, False}

#### A.1.2 Numeral Values

**Domain** Nat' =  $\mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$ , Nat =  $\mathbb{N}$ , Integer =  $\mathbb{Z}$ , Float =  $\mathbb{R}$

#### A.1.3 Environment Values

**Domains**

Environment = Context x Space  
Context = Identifier  $\rightarrow$  EnvValue  
EnvValue = Value + Type-Tag  
Space =  $\mathbb{P}(\text{Variable})$   
Variable := n, n  $\in$   $\mathbb{N}$  // represents location

#### A.1.4 State Values

**Domains**

State = Store x Data  
Store = Variable  $\rightarrow$  Value  
Data = Flag x Exception x Return  
Flag = {execute, exception, return, leave}  
Exception = Identifier x ValueU  
Return = ValueU

**Operations**

state : Store x Data  $\rightarrow$  State  
state(s,d) = <s,d>

exception : Identifier x ValueU  $\rightarrow$  Exception  
exception(i,v) = <i,v>

ide : Exception  $\rightarrow$  Identifier  
ide(i,v)  $\rightarrow$  i

valuee : Exception  $\rightarrow$  ValueU  
valuee(i,v)  $\rightarrow$  v

data : State  $\rightarrow$  Data  
data(s,d) = d

store : State  $\rightarrow$  Store  
store(s,d)  $\rightarrow$  s

flag : Data  $\rightarrow$  Flag  
flag(f,e,r) = f

exception : Data  $\rightarrow$  Exception  
exception(f,e,r) = e

return : Data  $\rightarrow$  Return  
return(f,e,r) = r

data : Flag x Exception x Return  $\rightarrow$  Data  
data(f,e,r) = <f,e,r>

execute : State  $\rightarrow$  State  
execute(s) = LET d = data(s) IN state(store(s), data(execute, exception(d)),  
return(d))

exception : State x String x ValueU  $\rightarrow$  State  
exception(s,st,v) = LET d = data(s) IN state(store(s), data(exception, (st,v)),  
return(d))

return : State x ValueU  $\rightarrow$  State  
return(s,v) = LET d = data(s) IN state(store(s), data(return, exception(d)),  
v))

executes  $\subset$  Data  
executes(d)  $\Leftrightarrow$  flag(d) = execute

exceptions  $\subset$  Data  
exceptions(d)  $\Leftrightarrow$  flag(d) = exception

returns  $\subset$  Data  
returns(d)  $\Leftrightarrow$  flag(d) = return

### A.1.5 Semantic Values

#### *Domain*

Value = Procedure + Module + List + Set + Tuple + Boolean + Integer  
+ String + Rational + Float  
+ Symbol

### A.1.6 Information Values

*Domain*

InfoData = Value + Data + Void

### A.1.7 List Values

*Domain* List = Value\*

### A.1.8 Unordered Values

*Domain* Set = List

### A.1.9 Tuple Values

*Domain* Tuple = List

### A.1.10 Procedure Values

*Domain* Procedure =  $\mathbb{P}(\text{Value}^* \times \text{State} \times \text{StateU} \times \text{ValueU})$

### A.1.11 Lifted Value domain

*Domains* ValueU = Value + Undefined, Undefined = Unit, StateU = State + Error, Error = Unit

## A.2 For Why3

All the syntactic domains of Why3 are included. Here we give the definitions of those semantic domains, which are used. The syntactic domains of Why3 are also suffixed with “w”.

### A.2.1 Variable Values

*Domains*

Variable := n,  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  // represents location

### A.2.2 State Values

*Domains*

Statew = Variable  $\rightarrow$  Valuw



### A.2.3 Environment Values

#### *Domains*

Environmentw // is a mapping from identifiers to type and represents Why3 type environment.

### A.2.4 Semantic Values

#### *Domain*

Valuew = c + Exceptionw + Functionw + Void

### A.2.5 Exception Values

*Domain* Exceptionw = Identifier x c

### A.2.6 Function Values

*Domain* Functionw = rec f x = c

### A.2.7 Constant Values

*Domain* c = Integerw + Booleanw + Listw + Setw + Tuplew + ...

// this domain hides all other corresponding Why3 domains of values. All suffixed “w” domains

// represent the corresponding built-in domains.

### A.2.8 Declaration Values

*Domain* Declw

### A.2.9 Theory Values

*Domain* Theoryw

### A.2.10 Why3 Types

*Domain* Typew = int + real + tuple + list(Typew) + set(Typew) + ...

// also includes other built in and extended (abstract) types of Why3

## B Auxiliary Functions and Predicates

### **equals** $\subset$ **State** $\times$ **Statew**

This predicate is true, if all the pairs of identifier and value in the former state have a pair of the same identifier and a corresponding value in the latter state.

$\text{equals}(s, t) \Leftrightarrow \forall i: \text{Identifier}: i \in \text{dom}(s) \rightarrow \exists vm \in \text{Value}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: (i, vm) \in s \wedge (i, vw) \in t \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw)$

### **equals** $\subset$ **Value** $\times$ **Valuew**

This predicate returns true, if the former value is a semantic equivalent to the latter value.

```
equals(vm, vw)  $\Leftrightarrow$ 
  cases vm of
    []isInteger(intm)  $\rightarrow$  cases vw of
      isIntegerw(intw)  $\rightarrow$  valueOf(intm) = valueOf(intw)
      [] _  $\rightarrow$  false
    end
    []isBoolean(bm)  $\rightarrow$  cases vw of
      isBooleanw(bw)  $\rightarrow$  valueOf(bm) = valueOf(bw)
      [] _  $\rightarrow$  false
    end
    [] ...  $\rightarrow$  ...
  end
```

### **equals** $\subset$ **InfoData** $\times$ **Valuew**

This predicate returns true, if the corresponding element of the InfoData is semantically equivalent to the given value.

```
equals(d, vw)  $\Leftrightarrow$ 
  cases d of
    []isValue(vm)  $\rightarrow$  equals(vm, vw)
    []isData(dm)  $\rightarrow$  IF exceptions(dm) THEN
      cases vw of
        isExceptionw(ew)  $\rightarrow$ 
          equals(getId(dm), getId(ew))  $\wedge$ 
          equals(getValue(dm), getValue(ew))
        [] _  $\rightarrow$  false
      end
    ELSE
      ...
    END
    []isVoid(mv)  $\rightarrow$  cases vw of
      isVoid(wv)  $\rightarrow$  true
      [] _  $\rightarrow$  false
    end
  end
```

### **wellTyped** $\subset$ **Environment** $\times$ **Syntactic\_Domain\_of\_MiniMaple**

The predicate returns true, if all the identifiers appearing in the given syntactic domain has a corresponding value in the given environment.

```

wellTyped(em, D) ⇔
cases D of
inCommand_Sequence(Cseq) →
cases Cseq of
isCseqC(C) → wellTyped(em, C)
isCseqCseq(C;Cseq) → wellTyped(em, C) ∧
LET em' = Env(e, C) IN wellTyped(em', Cseq)
end
inCommand(C) →
cases C of
isCCond(if E then Cseq1 else Cseq2) →
wellTyped(em, E) ∧
LET em' = Env(em, E) IN
wellTyped(em', Cseq1)
∧ LET em'' = Env(em', Cseq1) IN
wellTyped(em'', Cseq2)
[] ... →
end
inExpression(E) →
cases E of
isEIdentifier(I) → isDefined(I, em)
isEBoolean(B) → ∀ I : Identifier: I ∈ extractIdentifiers(B)
→ isDefined(I, em)
end
inExpression_Sequence(Eseq) → ...
end

```

**wellTyped**  $\subset$  **Expressionw**  $\times$  **Environmentw**  $\times$  **Declw**  $\times$  **Theoryw**

The predicate returns true, if all the identifiers appearing in the given syntactic Why3 expression has a corresponding value in the given environment or declaration or theory.

```

wellTyped(cw, ew, dw, tw) ⇔ consistent(ew, dw, tw) ∧ wellFormed(cw) ∧
∀ i: Identifier: i ∈ extractIdentifiers(cw) → isDefined(i, ew, dw, tw)

```

**isDefined**  $\subset$  **Identifier**  $\times$  **Environmentw**  $\times$  **Declw**  $\times$  **Theoryw**

The predicate returns true only if identifier has a corresponding definition in any of the given Why3 environment, declarations or theory.

**isDefined**  $\subset$  **Identifier**  $\times$  **Environment**

The predicate returns true only if identifier has a corresponding value in the given environment.

**consistent**  $\subset$  **Environment**  $\times$  **Environmentw**  $\times$  **Declw**  $\times$  **Theoryw**

This predicate returns true, if the given *MiniMaple* environment is consistent with the definitions as provided in the given Why3 environment, declaration and theory.

**consistent**  $\subset$  **Environmentw**  $\times$  **Declw**  $\times$  **Theoryw**

This predicate returns true, if the given Why3 environment has the definitions accessible in the given Why3 declaration and theory.

**wellFormed  $\subset$  Expressionw**

This predicate returns true, if the given Why3 expression is syntactically correct.

**infoData : State  $\rightarrow$  InfoData**

The function returns the information data or value extracted from the given command and state. This depends on the syntax of the given command and the control data of the given state.

infoData(s) = inInfoData(data(s)) , if exception(data(s)) is true  
inInfoData(Void) , if exception(data(s))

...

**extractIdentifiers : Syntactic\_Domain\_of\_Minimaple  $\rightarrow$  Identifier\_Sequence**

The function extracts the identifiers appearing in the given *MiniMaple* syntactic domain.

**extractIdentifiers : Expressionw  $\rightarrow$  Identifier\_Sequence**

The function extracts the identifiers appearing in the given Why3 expression.

**extractDeclarations : Expressionw  $\rightarrow$  Declw**

The function extracts the module declaration sequence appearing in the given Why3 expression.

**extractTheoryDeclarations : Expressionw  $\rightarrow$  Theoryw**

The function extracts the theory declarations appearing in the given Why3 expression.

**combines : Declw  $\times$  Declw  $\rightarrow$  Declw**

This function combines the given declaration and declaration sequence, it removes the duplicate declarations.

**combines : Theoryw  $\times$  Theoryw  $\rightarrow$  Theoryw**

This function combines the given theory and theory declaration sequence, it removes the duplicate theory declarations.

**extendsEnv  $\subset$  Environmentw  $\times$  Expressionw  $\times$  Environmentw**

This predicate returns true, if the former Why3 environment extends the latter.

extendsEnv(e1, c, e2)  $\Leftrightarrow$

$\forall I: \text{Identifier}, v \in \text{Value}, \text{Iseq} \in \text{Identifier\_Sequence}, \text{vseq} \in \text{Value\_Sequence}:$

[ (I,v)  $\in$  e2  $\Rightarrow$  (I,v)  $\in$  e1 ]

$\wedge$  [ Iseq = extractIdentifiers(c)  $\wedge$  vseq getValues(Iseq,c)  $\Rightarrow$  e1 = e2 U IVSettoSet(Iseq, vseq) ]

**extendsDecl  $\subset$  Environmentw  $\times$  Expressionw  $\times$  Environmentw**

This predicate returns true, if the former sequence of Why3 declaration extends the latter.

$\text{extendsDecl}(d1, c, d2) \Leftrightarrow$   
 $\forall d, dseq \in \text{Declw}: [ d \in \text{decltoSet}(d2) \Rightarrow d \in \text{decltoSet}(e1) ]$   
 $\wedge [ dseq = \text{extractDeclarations}(c) \Rightarrow \text{length}(d2) + \text{length}(dseq) = \text{length}(d1)$   
 $\wedge d1 = \text{combine}(d2, dseq) ]$

**extendsTheory  $\subset$  Environmentw  $\times$  Environmentw**

This predicate returns true, if the former sequence of Why3 theory extends the latter.

$\text{extendsTheory}(t1, c, t2) \Leftrightarrow$   
 $\forall t, tseq \in \text{Theoryw}: [ t \in \text{theorytoSet}(t2) \Rightarrow t \in \text{theorytoSet}(t1) ]$   
 $\wedge [ tseq = \text{extractTheoryDeclarations}(c) \Rightarrow \text{length}(t2) + \text{length}(tseq) =$   
 $\text{length}(t1) \wedge t1 = \text{combine}(t2, tseq) ]$

**extendsEnv  $\subset$  Environmentw  $\times$  Expressionw  $\times$  Environmentw**

This predicate returns true, if the latter Why3 environment extends the former environment with the identifiers appearing in the given Why3 expression.

$\text{extendsEnv}(e1, c, e2) \Leftrightarrow \text{LET } \text{iseq} = \text{extractIdentifiers}(c), \text{vseq} = \text{getValues}(\text{iseq}, c) \text{ IN}$   
 $e1 \cup \text{IVSeqtoSet}(\text{iseq}, \text{vseq}) = e2$

**extendsDecl  $\subset$  Declw  $\times$  Expressionw  $\times$  Declw**

This predicate returns true, if the latter Why3 declaration extends the former declaration with the declarations appearing in the given Why3 expression.

$\text{extendsDecl}(d1, c, d2) \Leftrightarrow \text{LET } dseq = \text{extractDeclarations}(c) \text{ IN}$   
 $\text{combine}(d1, dseq) = d2$

**extendsTheory  $\subset$  Theoryw  $\times$  Expressionw  $\times$  Theoryw**

This function returns a Why3 theory declaration sequence, which extends the given theory declaration sequence with the theory declarations appearing in the given Why3 expression.

$\text{extendsTheory}(t1, c, t2) \Leftrightarrow \text{LET } tseq = \text{extractTheoryDeclarations}(c) \text{ IN}$   
 $\text{combine}(t1, tseq) = t2$

**getId : Exceptionw  $\rightarrow$  Identifier**

This function returns the identifier of the given Why3 exception.

$\text{getId}(ew) = \text{LET } ew = (\text{id}, \text{val}) \text{ IN id}$

**getId : Data  $\rightarrow$  Identifier**

This function returns the identifier of the exception in the given Data.

$\text{getId}(d) = \text{LET } \text{id} = \text{ide}(\text{exception}(d)) \text{ IN id}$

**getId : Exceptionw  $\rightarrow$  Valuw**

This function returns the value of the given Why3 exception.

$\text{getId}(ew) = \text{LET } ew = (\text{id}, \text{val}) \text{ IN val}$

**getId : Data  $\rightarrow$  Value**

This function returns the value of the exception in the given Data.

$\text{getId}(d) = \text{LET } \text{val} = \text{valuee}(\text{exception}(d)) \text{ IN val}$

**ValueOf : Valuw  $\rightarrow$  Valuw**

This function returns the value of the Why3 semantic domain of value.

**ValueOf : Value  $\rightarrow$  Value**

This function returns the value of the *MiniMaple* semantic domain of value.

$\rightarrow_C (\mathbf{Statew} \times \mathbf{Expressionw}) \times (\mathbf{Statew} \times \mathbf{Valuew})$

This predicate holds for the big step semantics of Why3. The  $\langle t, c \rangle \rightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$  is a syntactic sugar for this predicate.

**IdSeqtoSet : Identifier\_Sequence  $\rightarrow$  Set**

This function converts a given identifier sequence to a set.

**Env : Environment  $\times$  Syntactic\_Domain\_of\_MiniMaple  $\rightarrow$  Environment**

This function, constructs an extends the given environment for the given syntactic *MiniMaple* domain.

**constructs : Statew  $\rightarrow$  State**

This function constructs a corresponding *MiniMaple* state for a given Why3 state.

## C Soundness Statements

Let's define the soundness statements for the translation of a *MiniMaple* command sequence (Cseq), command (C) and an expression (E) by the corresponding predicates as follows.

### C.1 For Command Sequence

Soundness\_cseq  $\subset$  Command\_Sequence  
 Soundness\_cseq(Cseq)  $\Leftrightarrow$   
 $\forall em \in \text{Environment}, cw \in \text{Expressionw}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environmentw}, dw, dw' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theoryw}:$

wellTyped(em, Cseq)  $\wedge$  consistent(em, ew, dw, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $\langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\![\text{Cseq}]\!](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow$  [ wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw')  $\wedge$  extendsEnv(ew', cw, ew)  $\wedge$  extends-  
 Decl(dw', cw, dw)  
 $\wedge$  extendsTheory(tw', cw, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $[\forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
 $\Rightarrow [\exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{Cseq}]\!(em)(s, s')]$   
 $\wedge$   
 $[\forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t)$   
 $\wedge \![\text{Cseq}]\!(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s')$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw)$   
 $]$   
 $]$   
 $]$

### C.2 For Command

Soundness\_c  $\subset$  Command  
 Soundness\_c(C)  $\Leftrightarrow$   
 $\forall em \in \text{Environment}, cw \in \text{Expressionw}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environmentw}, dw, dw' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theoryw}:$

wellTyped(em, C)  $\wedge$  consistent(em, ew, dw, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $\langle cw, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\![\text{C}]\!](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow$  [ wellTyped(cw, ew', dw', tw')  $\wedge$  extendsEnv(ew', cw, ew)  $\wedge$  extends-  
 Decl(dw', cw, dw)  
 $\wedge$  extendsTheory(tw', cw, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $[\forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
 $\Rightarrow [\exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{C}]\!(em)(s, s')]$   
 $\wedge$   
 $[\forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t)$   
 $\wedge \![\text{C}]\!(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s')$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw)$   
 $]$   
 $]$

### C.3 For Expression

Soundness\_e  $\subset$  Expression

Soundness\_e(E)  $\Leftrightarrow$

$\forall$  em  $\in$  Environment, expw,  $\in$  Exprw, ew, ew'  $\in$  Environmentw, dw, dw'  $\in$  Declw, tw, tw'  $\in$  Theoryw:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{expw}, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{expw}, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{expw}, ew) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{expw}, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{expw}, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{expw} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

### C.4 For Identifier

Soundness\_e  $\subset$  Identifier

Soundness\_e(I)  $\Leftrightarrow$

$\forall$  em  $\in$  Environment, i  $\in$  Constantw, ew, ew'  $\in$  Environmentw, dw, dw'  $\in$  Declw, tw  $\in$  Theoryw:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, I) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle i, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(i, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', i, ew) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', i, dw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t \in \text{Statew}: \langle t, i \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t, i \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists v \in \text{Variable}: [[I]](em)(v) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall v \in \text{Variable}: [[I]](em)(v) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(v, I) ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

### C.5 Goal

We need to prove the following goal:

$\forall$  Cseq  $\in$  Command, C  $\in$  Command, E  $\in$  Expression, I  $\in$  Identifier:  
Soundness\_cseq(Cseq)  $\wedge$  Soundness\_c(C)  $\wedge$  Soundness\_e(E)



## D Proof

In the following we give definition of some constructs of related syntactic domains of *MiniMaple*.

```

Cseq := C | C;Cseq    // originally was EMPTY | C;Cseq
C := ... | if E then Cseq else Cseq end if | while E do Cseq end do |
...
E := ... | E and E | E or E | E = E | E < E | E <= E | E > E | E >=
E | not E | ...
Eseq := E | E;Eseq    // originally was EMPTY | E;Eseq
I := is a MiniMaple identifier

```

We have modified the syntactic domain of command sequence, because no corresponding Why3 semantics is defined for skip command, which is a corresponding translation of an empty command sequence.

Our goal is formulated as follows:

**Goal:**

$\forall Cseq \in \text{Command\_Sequence}, C \in \text{Command}, E \in \text{Expression}:$   
 $\text{Soundness\_cseq}(Cseq) \wedge \text{Soundness\_c}(C) \wedge \text{Soundness\_e}(E) \text{ -----}$   
--- (G)

**Proof:**

We prove the goal by structural induction on Cseq, C and E whose formal grammar rules are defined. Also the rules for the questioned semantics are defined in Why3 by "  $\_ \longrightarrow \_$ " notation.

By splitting G, we have following three sub-goals:

$\text{Soundness\_cseq}(Cseq) \text{ ----- (G1)}$   
 $\text{Soundness\_c}(C) \text{ ----- (G2)}$   
 $\text{Soundness\_e}(E) \text{ ----- (G3)}$

In the following, we prove the above sub-goals respectively.

### D.1 Case G1: Soundness of Command Sequence

**Case 1:** Cseq := C

From induction assumption, we know that  
 $\text{Soundness\_c}(C) \text{ ----- (1)}$

Also from the definitions of semantics, we know that the semantics of C and Cseq are equivalent, s.t.

$$\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \sim \llbracket C \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \text{ ----- (2)}$$

and also the corresponding translation functions are equal, s.t.

$$T\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(\text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \sim T\llbracket C \rrbracket(\text{em})(\text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \text{ ----- (3)}$$

The goal (G1) follows from (1), (2) and (3). Hence proved.

**Case 2:**  $\text{Cseq} := C; \text{Cseq}$

Let  $\text{em}, \text{cw}, \text{em}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}, \text{dw}', \text{tw}, \text{tw}'$ , be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, C; \text{Cseq}) & \text{ ----- (1)} \\ \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) & \text{ ----- (2)} \\ (\text{cw}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = T\llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) & \text{ ----- (3)} \end{aligned}$$

We show:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(\text{cw}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') & \text{ ----- (a)} \\ \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{cw}, \text{ew}) & \text{ ----- (b)} \\ \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', \text{cw}, \text{dw}) & \text{ ----- (c)} \\ \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{cw}, \text{tw}) & \text{ ----- (d)} \\ [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{cw} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\ \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\ \wedge \\ [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ \wedge \llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\ \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\ ] \\ ] & \text{ ----- (e)} \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal (a)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq1) with  
 $\text{cseq}$  as  $C; \text{Cseq}$ ,  $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}$ ,  $e$  as  $\text{cw}$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}'$ ,  $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  
 $\text{dw}'$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}$ ,  $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}'$   
and get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, C; \text{Cseq}) \wedge (\text{cw}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = T\llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\ \Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(\text{cw}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \end{aligned}$$

This goal follows from assumptions (1) and (3).

**Sub-Goal (b)**

By definition of translation function (D2) of  $T\llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket$ , there are  $e1, e2, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}''$  for which

$$(\text{cw}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = T\llbracket C; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \text{ ----- (3)}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
cw = e1;e2 & \text{----- (3.a)} \\
(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') = T[[C]](em, ew, dw, tw) & \text{----- (3.b)} \\
em' = Env(em, C) & \text{----- (3.b')} \\
(e2, ew', dw', tw') = T[[Cseq]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') & \text{----- (3.c)}
\end{aligned}$$

and  $e1;e2$  is a syntactic sugar for  $\text{let } \_ = e1 \text{ in } e2$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq3) with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $C$  as  $C$  and  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$

from which following holds

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{wellTyped}(em, C) & \text{----- (1.a)} \\
em' = Env(em, C) & \text{----- (1.b)} \\
\text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq) & \text{----- (1.c)}
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $C$  with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $cw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  
 $tw'$  as  $tw''$

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, C) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[C]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(dw'', e1, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[C]](em)(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge [[C]](em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2) and (3.b), it follows that

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \text{----- (3.d)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq4) with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$ ,  $C$  as  $C$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew'$ ,  $e1$  as  $e1$ ,  $e2$  as  
 $e2$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw'$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw'$ ,  $ew''$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw''$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw''$   
as  $tw''$

to get

$$\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[C]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = Env(em, C) \wedge$$

$$\begin{aligned} \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle &= T[\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, \\ dw, tw) \\ &\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', dw'', dw'', tw'') \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (3.b), (3.b'), (3.c) and (2), it follows that

$$\text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (3.e)$$

We instantiate the induction assumption for Cseq with  
em as em', cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ &\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ &\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\ &\text{Decl}(dw', e2, dw'') \\ &\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\ &\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ &\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') ] \\ &\quad \quad \wedge \\ &\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ &\quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ &\quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ &\quad \quad ] \\ &\quad ] \\ &] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e) and (3.c), it follows that

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (3.f)$$

From (3.a), we can re-write the goal (b) as

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', e1;e2, ew) \quad \text{-----} \quad (b)$$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq2) with  
em as em, C as C, Cseq as Cseq, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew'' as ew'', e1 as e1,  
e2 as e2, dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{wellTyped}(em, C;Cseq) \wedge \langle e1;e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket C;Cseq \rrbracket](em, ew, dw, \\ &tw) \\ &\Rightarrow \\ &\quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \\ &e1;e2, ew) ] \wedge \\ &\quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\ &\text{Decl}(dw', e1;e2, dw) ] \wedge \end{aligned}$$

[ extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw)  $\wedge$  extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'')  $\Rightarrow$  extendsTheory(tw', e1;e2, tw) ]

The goal (b) follows from assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.d) and (3.f). Hence proved.

### Sub-Goal (c)

We instantiate the soundness statement for C with em as em, cw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{C}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[\![\text{C}]\!](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{C} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{C} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2) and (3.b), it follows that

extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) ----- (3.g)

We instantiate the induction assumption for Cseq with em as em', cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
& \langle \text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\![\text{Cseq}]\!](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e2}, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e2}, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
\wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
\quad ] \\
\quad ] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e) and (3.c), it follows that

$$\text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (3.h)$$

From (3.a), we can re-write the goal (c) as

$$\text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', \text{e1};\text{e2}, \text{dw}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (b)$$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq2) with  
em as em, C as C, Cseq as Cseq, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew'' as ew'', e1 as e1,  
e2 as e2, dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{C};\text{Cseq}) \wedge \langle \text{e1};\text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}\llbracket \text{C};\text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \\
\text{tw}) \\
\Rightarrow \\
[ \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e2}, \text{ew}'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \\
\text{e1};\text{e2}, \text{ew}) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(\text{dw}', \text{e1};\text{e2}, \text{dw}) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e2}, \text{tw}'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\
\text{Theory}(\text{tw}', \text{e1};\text{e2}, \text{tw}) ]
\end{array}$$

The goal (c) follows from assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.g) and (3.h). Hence proved.

### Sub-Goal (d)

We instantiate the soundness statement for C with  
em as em, cw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as tw,  
tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{C}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
\langle \text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}\llbracket \text{C} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \\
\wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
[ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, \text{vw} \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{C} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
\wedge \\
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t)
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
\wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
\quad ] \\
\quad ] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2) and (3.b), it follows that

$$\text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', e1, \text{tw}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (3.i)$$

We instantiate the induction assumption for Cseq with em as em', cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
\langle e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\
\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', e2, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(\text{dw}', e2, \text{dw}'') \\
\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', e2, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
\quad \quad \wedge \\
\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
\quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
\quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
\quad \quad ] \\
\quad ] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e) and (3.c), it follows that

$$\text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', e2, \text{tw}'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (3.j)$$

From (3.a), we can re-write the goal (d) as

$$\text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', e1;e2, \text{tw}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (b)$$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq2) with

em as em, C as C, Cseq as Cseq, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew'' as ew'', e1 as e1, e2 as e2, dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{C};\text{Cseq}) \wedge \langle e1;e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{C};\text{Cseq} \rrbracket](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \\
\text{tw}) \\
\Rightarrow \\
[ \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', e1, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', e2, \text{ew}'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \\
e1;e2, \text{ew}) ] \wedge
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e1;e2, dw) ] \wedge \\
& [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e1;e2, tw) ]
\end{aligned}$$

The goal (c) follows from assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.i) and (3.j). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (e)**

Let  $t, t', cw, vw$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\langle t, cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (4)}$$

From (3.a), we know

$cw = e1;e2$  which is a syntactic sugar for  $\text{let } \_ = e1 \text{ in } e2$ .

From (com-s), we get

$$\langle t, \text{let } \_ = e1 \text{ in } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (4')}$$

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle \text{ for some } t'', \text{ where } vw' \text{ in not exception ----- (5)}$$

$$\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ for some } t'' \text{ ----- (6)}$$

We show:

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C;Cseq \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{ ----- (e.a)}$$

$$\forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C;Cseq \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s')$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \text{ ----- (e.b)}$$

**Sub-Goal (e.a)**

We define:

$$s := \text{constructs}(t) \text{ ----- (4.a)}$$

We show:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \text{ ----- (e.a.1)}$$

$$\llbracket C;Cseq \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{ ] ----- (e.a.2)}$$

**Sub-Goal (e.a.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s$  and  $t$  as  $t$  to get



$s = \text{construct}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s,t)$

From (4.a) and lemma (L-cseq5) we know

$\text{equals}(s,t)$

which is the goal (e.a.1). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal** (e.a.2)

We instantiate the soundness statement for  $C$  with  
 $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}$ ,  $\text{cw}$  as  $\text{e1}$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}$ ,  $\text{ew}'$  as  $\text{ew}''$ ,  $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  $\text{dw}''$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}$ ,  
 $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}''$

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, C) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[C](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw' \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s'' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s'') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s'' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s'') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s'') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s'', t'') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.b) and soundness statement of  $C$ , we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula with  
 $t$  as  $t$  and  $t'$  as  $t''$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw'$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t'' \in \text{Statew}, vw' \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \mathbb{[C]}(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw') \\ ] \\ ] \end{array}$$

From assumption (1.d), we know

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ]$$

By instantiating above with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s''$ , we know that

there is  $s, s''$  s.t.

$$\llbracket C \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.a.2.1})$$

We instantiate the induction assumption for  $C_{\text{seq}}$  with  $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}'$ ,  $\text{cw}$  as  $\text{e2}$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}''$ ,  $\text{ew}'$  as  $\text{ew}'$ ,  $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}''$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  $\text{dw}'$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}''$ ,  $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}'$

to get

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', C_{\text{seq}}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ \langle \text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \mathbb{T} \llbracket C_{\text{seq}} \rrbracket(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\ \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e2}, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\ \text{Decl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \\ \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e2}, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C_{\text{seq}} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\ \quad \quad \wedge \\ \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket C_{\text{seq}} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ \quad \quad ] \\ \quad ] \\ ] \\ ] \end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e), (3.c) and induction assumption of  $C_{\text{seq}}$ , we know

$$\begin{array}{l} [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket C_{\text{seq}} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\ \quad \wedge \\ \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket C_{\text{seq}} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ \quad ] \\ ] \end{array}$$

We instantiate the above formula with  $t$  as  $t''$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t'', t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (6) and above formula we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ]$$

By instantiating the above formula with  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ , we know that

there is  $s''$ ,  $s'$  s.t.

$$\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s'', s') \quad \text{----- (e.a.2.2)}$$

From (e.a.2.1) and (e.a.2.2) the definition of semantics of command sequence follows, which is the goal (e.b.2). Hence proved.

From goals (e.b.1) and (e.b.2), the goal (e.b) follows. Hence (e.b) is proved.

### Sub-Goal (e.b)

Let  $s, s', dm$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \quad \text{----- (7)}$$

$$\llbracket \text{C}; \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \quad \text{----- (8)}$$

$$dm = \text{infoData}(s') \quad \text{----- (9)}$$

We define:

$$s' := \text{constructs}(t') \quad \text{----- (9.a)}$$

$$vw := \text{constructs}(dm) \quad \text{----- (9.b)}$$

We show:

$$\text{equals}(s', t') \quad \text{----- (e.b.1)}$$

$$\text{equals}(dm, vw) \quad \text{----- (e.b.2)}$$

### Sub-Sub-Goal (e.b.1)

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t')$$

From (9.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$\text{equals}(s', t')$   
which is the goal (e.b.1). Hence proved.

**Sub-Sub-Goal** (e.b.2)

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq6) with  
 $v$  as  $vw$ ,  $v'$  as  $dm$   
to get

$vw = \text{constructs}(dm) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(dm, vw)$   
From (9.b) and (L-cseq6), we know

$\text{equals}(dm, vw)$

which is the goal (e.b.2). Hence proved.

Consequently, the goal (e.b) follows from (e.b.1) and (e.b.2). Hence (e.b) is proved.

Finally, the goal (e) follows from goals (e.a) and (e.b).

Also the goal (G1) follows from goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e).

Hence (G1) proved.

## D.2 Case G2: Soundness of Command

We prove it by structural induction on  $C$  for some selected cases.

### D.2.1 Case 1: $C := \text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}$

The goal (G2) can be re-stated as follows:

$\forall em \in \text{Environment}, e1, e2, e3 \in \text{Expressionw}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environmentw}, dw, dw' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theoryw}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, \text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, \\
& dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end} \\
& \text{if}](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \\
& \text{then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge [\text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}](em)(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge [\text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}](em)(s, s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(C, s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ] \quad \text{----- (G21)}
\end{aligned}$$

Let  $em, e1, e2, e3, ew, ew', dw, dw', tw, tw', dm$  and  $vw$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}) \quad \text{----- (1)}$$

$$\text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (2)}$$

$$\langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end if}](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (3)}$$

By expanding the definition of (3), we know

$$\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[E](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (3.a)}$$

$$em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \quad \text{----- (3.a')}$$

$$\langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[C_{\text{seq1}}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{----- (3.b)}$$

$$\langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[C_{\text{seq2}}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{----- (3.c)}$$

We show:

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw') \quad \text{----- (a)} \\
\text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) \quad \text{----- (b)} \\
\text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) \quad \text{----- (c)} \\
\text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) \quad \text{----- (d)} \\
[ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end if} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
\wedge \\
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
\wedge \llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end if} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\
\wedge dm = \text{infoData}(\llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end if} \rrbracket, s') \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
] \\
] \quad \text{----- (e)}
\end{array}$$

**Sub-Goal (a)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c1) with  
c as if E then Cseq1 else Cseq2 end, em as em, e as if e1 then e2 else e3, ew  
as ew, ew' as ew', dw as dw, dw' as dw', tw as tw, tw' as tw'  
and get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}) \\
\wedge (\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw') = \text{T}\llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \\
\text{end} \rrbracket(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \\
\Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw')
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1), (3) and (L-c1), we know

$$\text{wellTyped}(\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw')$$

which is the goal (a). Hence (a) proved.

**Sub-Goal (b)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c3) with  
em as em, em' as em', E as E, Cseq1 as Cseq1, Cseq2 as Cseq2  
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}) \Rightarrow \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', Cseq1) \wedge \text{well-} \\
\text{Typed}(\text{em}', Cseq2)
\end{array}$$

From (1) and (L-c3), we know

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a)} \\
\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a')} \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', Cseq1) \quad \text{----- (1.b)} \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', Cseq2) \quad \text{----- (1.c)}
\end{array}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c4) with

em as em, em' as em', E as E, Cseq1 as Cseq1, Cseq2 as Cseq2, ew as ew,  
 ew' ew', ew'' as ew'', ew''' as ew''', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', dw''' as  
 dw''', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw'', tw''' as tw'''  
 to get

$$\begin{aligned} \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw''' \rangle &= T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = Env(em, E) \wedge \\ \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle &= T[[Cseq1]](em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \\ \langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle &= T[[Cseq2]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, \\ dw, tw) \\ &\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (3.c), (2) and (L-c4), we know

$$\begin{aligned} \text{consistent}(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') &\text{----- (2.a)} \\ \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') &\text{----- (2.b)} \end{aligned}$$

We instantiate soundness statement of E with

em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
 tw, tw' as tw''  
 and get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw''' \rangle &= T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{ex-} \\ \text{tendsDecl}(dw''', e1, dw) \\ &\wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \\ [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\ &\wedge \\ [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\ \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\ &] \\ ] \\ ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \text{----- (b.1)}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq1 with

em as em' cw as e2, ew as ew''', ew' as ew'', dw as dw''', dw' as dw'', tw as  
 tw''', tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq1) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \\ \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle &= T[[Cseq1]](em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew''') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw''') \\
&\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw''') \wedge \\
&\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
&\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
&\quad \quad \wedge \\
&\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
&\quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
&\quad \quad ] \\
&\quad ] \\
&]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew''') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.2})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq2 with em as em', cw as e3, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw'', tw as tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq2}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
&\langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
&\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e3, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e3, ew'') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e3, dw'') \\
&\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e3, tw'') \wedge \\
&\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
&\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
&\quad \quad \wedge \\
&\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
&\quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
&\quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
&\quad \quad ] \\
&\quad ] \\
&]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (2.b), (3.c) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', e3, ew'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.3})$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c2) with em as em, E as E, Cseq1 as Cseq1, Cseq2 as Cseq2, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, e3 as e3, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', ew'' as ew''', ew''' as ew'''', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', dw''' as dw''', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw'', tw''' as tw''''

to get



$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{if } E \text{ then } C\text{seq1} \text{ else } C\text{seq2} \text{ end}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{if } E \text{ then } C\text{seq1} \text{ else } C\text{seq2} \\
& \text{end}](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw'''\rangle = T[E](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw''\rangle = T[C\text{seq1}](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e3, ew', dw', tw'\rangle = T[C\text{seq2}](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew''') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{sEnv}(ew', e3, ew'') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw''', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{Decl}(dw', e3, dw'') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{sTheory}(tw', e3, tw'') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (3.c), (b.1), (b.2), (b.3) and lemma (L-c2), we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew)$$

which is the goal. Hence (b) proved.

### Sub-Goal (c)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew''', dw as dw, dw' as dw''', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw'''\rangle = T[E](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{Decl}(dw''', e1, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [E](\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [E](\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& \quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.4})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq1 with  
em as em' cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew'', dw as dw'', dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em', \text{Cseq1}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[\text{Cseq1}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ \Rightarrow & [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \\ & \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw'') \wedge \\ & [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [\text{Cseq1}](em')(s, s') ] \\ & \wedge \\ & [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ & \wedge [\text{Cseq1}](em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ & ] \\ & ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.5})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq2 with  
em as em' cw as e3, ew as ew'', ew' as ew'', dw as dw'', dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em', \text{Cseq2}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \langle e3, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[\text{Cseq2}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ \Rightarrow & [ \text{wellTyped}(e3, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e3, ew'') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e3, dw'') \\ & \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e3, tw'') \wedge \\ & [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [\text{Cseq2}](em')(s, s') ] \\ & \wedge \\ & [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ & \wedge [\text{Cseq2}](em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ & ] \\ & ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (2.b), (3.c) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

extendsDecl(dw', e3, dw'') ----- (b.6)

We instantiate lemma (L-c2) with

em as em, E as E, Cseq1 as Cseq1, Cseq2 as Cseq2, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, e3 as e3, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', ew'' as ew''', ew''' as ew''', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', dw'' as dw''', dw''' as dw''', tw as tw, tw' as tw'', tw'' as tw''', tw''' as tw'''

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \\
& \text{end}](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw'' \rangle = T[E](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[Cseq1](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[Cseq2](\text{em}', ew', dw', tw') \wedge \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{sEnv}(ew', e3, ew') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw''', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{Decl}(dw', e3, dw'') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{sTheory}(tw', e3, tw') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (3.c), (b.4), (b.5), (b.6) and lemma (L-c2), we know

extendsDecl(dw', if e1 then e2 else e3, dw)

which is the goal. Hence (c) proved.

### Sub-Goal (d)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with

em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew''', dw as dw, dw' as dw''', tw as tw, tw' as tw'''

and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw'' \rangle = T[E](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew''', dw''', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extends} \\
& \quad \text{Decl}(dw''', e1, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [E](\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [E](\text{em})(s, s', vm) ]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\ & \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.7})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq1 with em as em' cw as e2, ew as ew''', ew' as ew'', dw as dw''', dw' as dw'', tw as tw''', tw' as tw''

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em', \text{Cseq1}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq1}](em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \\ & \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew''') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw''') \\ & \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw''') \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq1}](em')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ & \quad \quad \quad \wedge \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq1}](em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw''') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.8})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq2 with em as em' cw as e3, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw'', tw as tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em', \text{Cseq2}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq2}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ & \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e3, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e3, ew'') \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e3, dw'') \\ & \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e3, tw'') \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq2}](em')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
\quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
\quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
] \\
] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (2.b), (3.c) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', e3, tw'') \text{ ----- (b.9)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c2) with  
em as em, E as E, Cseq1 as Cseq1, Cseq2 as Cseq2, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, e3 as e3, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', ew'' as ew''', ew''' as ew''', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', dw'' as dw''', dw''' as dw''', tw as tw, tw' as tw'', tw'' as tw''', tw''' as tw''''  
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{if } E \text{ then } \text{Cseq1} \text{ else } \text{Cseq2} \text{ end}) \wedge \\
\langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } \text{Cseq1} \text{ else } \text{Cseq2} \\
\text{end} \rrbracket](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
\langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw'''' \rangle = T[\llbracket E \rrbracket](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \\
\langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[\llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
\langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
\Rightarrow \\
[ \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew''') \wedge \text{extends} \\
\text{sEnv}(ew', e3, ew'') \\
\Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsDecl}(dw''', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
\text{Decl}(dw', e3, dw'') \\
\Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw'') \wedge \text{extends} \\
\text{sTheory}(tw', e3, tw'') \\
\Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) ]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (3.c), (b.7), (b.8), (b.9) and lemma (L-c2), we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw)$$

which is the goal. Hence (d) proved.

### Sub-Goal (e)

Let t, t', cw, vw be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\langle t, cw \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (4)}$$

From (3), we know

$$\langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (4')}$$

From rule (cond-t), we assume

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \text{ for some } t'' \text{ ----- (5)}$$

$$\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ for some } t'' \text{ ----- (6)}$$

From rule (cond-f), we assume

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{false} \rangle \text{ for some } t'' \text{ ----- (7)}$$

$$\langle t'', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ for some } t'' \text{ ----- (8)}$$

We define:

$$s := \text{constructs}(t) \text{ ----- (4.a)}$$

$$s'' := \text{constructs}(t'') \text{ ----- (4.b)}$$

$$s' := \text{constructs}(t') \text{ ----- (4.c)}$$

We show:

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } C\text{seq1} \text{ else } C\text{seq2} \text{ end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{ ----- (e.a)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } C\text{seq1} \text{ else } C\text{seq2} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\ \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \text{ ----- (e.b)} \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal** (e.a)

We show:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \text{ ----- (e.a.1)}$$

$$\llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } C\text{seq1} \text{ else } C\text{seq2} \text{ end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{ ] ----- (e.a.2)}$$

**Sub-Goal** (e.a.1)

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  
s as s, t as t  
to get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t)$$

From assumption (4.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\text{equals}(s, t)$$

which is the goal (e.a.1). Hence (e.a.1) is proved.

**Sub-Goal** (e.a.2)

We instantiate soundness statement of  $E$  with  
 $em$  as  $em$ ,  $expw$  as  $e1$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  
 $tw$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$   
and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{ex-} \\
& \text{tendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of  $E$ , we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& ] \text{----- (T)}
\end{aligned}$$

We have two cases here for (T)

**Case 1: When  $vw = \text{True}$**

We instantiate (T) with  
 $t$  as  $t$ ,  $t'$  as  $t''$ ,  $vw$  as  $\text{true}$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (5), we know

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm)$$

By instantiating above formula with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s''$ ,  $vm$  as  $inValue(True)$ , we know

there is  $s, s'', inValue(True)$

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s'', inValue(True)) \text{ ----- (e.a.2.1)}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of  $Cseq$  for  $Cseq1$  with  $em$  as  $em'$ ,  $cw$  as  $e2$ ,  $ew$  as  $ew'''$ ,  $ew'$  as  $ew''$ ,  $dw$  as  $dw'''$ ,  $dw'$  as  $dw''$ ,  $tw$  as  $tw'''$ ,  $tw'$  as  $tw''$

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & wellTyped(em', Cseq1) \wedge consistent(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T\llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em', ew''', dw''', tw''') \\ & \Rightarrow [ wellTyped(e2, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge extendsEnv(ew'', e2, ew''') \wedge ex- \\ & \text{tendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw''') \\ & \quad \wedge extendsTheory(tw'', e2, tw''') \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in Statew, vw \in Valuew: \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in State: equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData: equals(s, t) \\ & \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ & \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e), (3.c) and soundness statement of  $Cseq$ , we know

$$\begin{aligned} & [ \forall t, t' \in Statew, vw \in Valuew: \langle t, e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in State: equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData: equals(s, t) \\ & \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ & \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula with  $t$  as  $t''$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & [ \forall t'', t' \in Statew, vw \in Valuew: \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in State: equals(s, t) \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in State, dm \in InfoData: equals(s, t) \\ & \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket Cseq1 \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = infoData(s') \\ & \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow equals(s', t') \wedge equals(dm, vw) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$



From assumption (6) and above formula we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ]$$

By instantiating the above formula with  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ , we know that

there is  $s''$ ,  $s'$  s.t.

$$\llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s'', s') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.a.2.2})$$

From (e.a.2.1), (e.a.2.2) and the definition of semantics of conditional command (when  $E$  evaluates to True) follows, which proves Case 1 of the goal (e.a.2).

### Case 2: When $\text{vw} = \text{False}$

We instantiate above (T) with  $t$  as  $t$ ,  $t'$  as  $t''$ ,  $\text{vw}$  as false to get

$$\begin{aligned} \langle t, e1 \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{false} \rangle \\ &\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\ &\quad \wedge \\ &\quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\ &\quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) ] \\ &\quad ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumption (7), we know

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm})$$

By instantiating above formula with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s''$ ,  $\text{vm}$  as  $\text{inValue}(\text{False})$ , we know

there is  $s, s''$ ,  $\text{inValue}(\text{False})$

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s'', \text{inValue}(\text{False})) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.a.2.3})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq for Cseq2 with  $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}'$ ,  $\text{cw}$  as  $\text{e3}$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}''$ ,  $\text{ew}'$  as  $\text{ew}'$ ,  $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}''$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  $\text{dw}'$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}''$ ,  $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}''$

to get

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq2}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ &\langle \text{e3}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'')] \\ &\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e3}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e3}, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\ &\quad \text{Decl}(\text{dw}', \text{e3}, \text{dw}'') \\ &\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e3}, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ &\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e3} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\ &\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \wedge \\
& [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& ] \\
& ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.c), (3.e), (3.c) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula with  $t$  as  $t''$ ,  $t'$  as  $t'$ ,  $vw$  as  $vw$  to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t'', t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t'', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq1} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (8) and above formula we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ]$$

By instantiating the above formula with  $s$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ , we know that

there is  $s''$ ,  $s'$  s.t.

$$\llbracket \text{Cseq2} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s'', s') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.a.2.4})$$

From (e.a.2.3), (e.a.2.4) and the definition of semantics of conditional command (when  $E$  evaluates to  $\text{False}$ ) follows, which proves Case 2 of the goal (e.a.2).

The full definition of (e.a) follows from (e.a.2.1), (e.a.2.2), (e.a.2.3), (e.a.2.4) and (3.a'). Hence (e.a) is proved.

**Sub-Goal** (e.b)

Let  $s, s', dm, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{equals}(s,t) \quad \text{-----} \quad (7) \\ \llbracket \text{if } E \text{ then } C_{\text{seq1}} \text{ else } C_{\text{seq2}} \text{ end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s,s') \quad \text{-----} \quad (8) \\ dm = \text{infoData}(s') \quad \text{-----} \quad (9) \end{array}$$

We define:

$$\begin{array}{l} s' := \text{constructs}(t') \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.a) \\ vw := \text{constructs}(dm) \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.b) \end{array}$$

We show:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{equals}(s', t') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.b.1}) \\ \text{equals}(dm, vw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{e.b.2}) \end{array}$$

**Sub-Sub-Goal (e.b.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t')$$

From (9.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{equals}(s', t') \\ \text{which is the goal (e.b.1). Hence proved.} \end{array}$$

**Sub-Sub-Goal (e.b.2)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq6) with  $v$  as  $vw$ ,  $v'$  as  $dm$  to get

$$\begin{array}{l} vw = \text{constructs}(dm) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ \text{From (9.b) and (L-cseq6), we know} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\ \text{which is the goal (e.b.2). Hence proved.} \end{array}$$

Consequently, the goal (e.b) follows from (e.b.1) and (e.b.2). Hence (e.b) is proved.

Finally, the goal (e) follows from goals (e.a) and (e.b).

Also the goal (G21) follows from goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e).

Hence (G21) proved.

## D.2.2 Case 2: $C := I$ , $Iseq := E$ , $Eseq$

Based on the available semantics definition of corresponding Why3 constructs ( $Iseq$ ), we limit the proof here as explain next; we have many sub-cases depending on the grammar of  $Iseq$  and  $Eseq$ ; however, we prove the usual case (when  $Iseq$  and  $Eseq$  are  $EMPTY$ ) and the rests are left as an exercise.

As the behavior respectively translation of an assignment command is depends on whether it has occurred in the “global” and “local” context. We consider only the “local” context, when the variables are already declared.

Also, we assume the case, when an expression  $E$  evaluates to some value other than a module or a procedure because of the missing semantics definition of corresponding Why3 constructs.

The goal (G2) can be re-stated as follows:

$\forall em \in \text{Environment}, x, e \in \text{Expression}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}, dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, I := E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle x := e, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I := E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
\Rightarrow & [ \text{wellTyped}(x := e, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', x := e, ew) \\
& \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', x := e, dw) \\
& \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', x := e, tw) \wedge \\
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{void} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, x := e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \wedge [[I := E]](em)(s, s') ] \\
& \wedge \\
& [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \wedge [[I := E]](em)(s, s') \\
& \quad \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(I := E, s') \\
& \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, \text{void}) \\
& ] \\
& ] \\
& ] \quad \text{----- (G2)}
\end{aligned}$$

Let  $em, x, e, ew, ew', dw, dw', tw, tw', dm$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, I := E) \quad \text{----- (1)} \\
& \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (2)} \\
& \langle x := e, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I := E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (3)}
\end{aligned}$$

By expanding the definition of (3), we know

$$\langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (3.a)}$$

$$em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \quad \text{----- (3.a')}$$

$$\langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{----- (3.b)}$$

We show:

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(x:=e, ew', dw', tw') \quad \text{----- (a)} \\
\text{extendsEnv}(ew', x:=e, ew) \quad \text{----- (b)} \\
\text{extendsDecl}(dw', x:=e, dw) \quad \text{----- (c)} \\
\text{extendsTheory}(tw', x:=e, tw) \quad \text{----- (d)} \\
[ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{void} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, x:=e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \\
\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket I:=E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
\wedge \\
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
\wedge \llbracket I:=E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\
\wedge dm = \text{infoData}(I:=E, s') \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, \text{void}) \\
] \\
] \quad \text{----- (e)}
\end{array}$$

**Sub-Goal (a)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c1) with  
c as I:=E, em as em, e as x:=e, ew as ew, ew' as ew', dw as dw, dw' as dw',  
tw as tw, tw' as tw'  
and get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, I:=E) \\
\wedge (x:=e, ew', dw', tw') = T\llbracket I:=E \rrbracket(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \\
\Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(x:=e, ew', dw', tw')
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1), (3) and (L-c1), we know

$$\text{wellTyped}(x:=e, ew', dw', tw')$$

which is the goal (a). Hence (a) proved.

**Sub-Goal (b)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c5) with  
em as em, em' as em', I as I, E as E  
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, I:=E) \Rightarrow \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', I)
\end{array}$$

From (1) and (L-c5), we know

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a)} \\
\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a')} \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', I) \quad \text{----- (1.b)}
\end{array}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c6) with

em as em, em' as em', I as I, E as E, x as x, e as e, ew as ew, ew' ew', ew'' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

$$\begin{aligned} \langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle &= T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = Env(em, E) \wedge \\ \langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle &= T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, \\ tw) \\ &\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (2) and (L-c6), we know

$$\text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \text{ ----- (2.a)}$$

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ &\langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ &\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e, ew) \wedge \text{extends-} \\ &\text{Decl}(dw'', e, dw) \\ &\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e, tw) \wedge \\ &\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ &\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\ &\quad \quad \wedge \\ &\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\ &\quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\ &\quad \quad ] \\ &\quad ] \\ &\quad ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e, ew) \text{ ----- (b.1)}$$

We instantiate soundness statement of E for identifier expression with  
em as em', expw as x, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw'  
and get

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{wellTyped}(em', I) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ &\langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ &\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(x, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', x, ew'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\ &\text{Decl}(dw', x, dw'') \\ &\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', x, tw'') \wedge \\ &\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, x \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ &\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[I]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\ &\quad \quad \wedge \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket I \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
] \\
] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', x, ew'') \text{ ----- (b.2)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c7) with  
em as em, em' as em', I as I, E as E, x as x, e as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew''  
as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \\
\langle x:=e, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T\llbracket I:=E \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
\langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T\llbracket E \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \\
\langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T\llbracket I \rrbracket(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
\Rightarrow \\
[ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', x, ew'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \\
x:=e, ew) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', x, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(dw', x:=e, dw) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', x, tw'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\
\text{Theory}(tw', x:=e, tw) ]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (b.1), (b.2) and lemma (L-c7),  
we know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', x:=e, ew)$$

which is the goal. Hence (b) proved.

### Sub-Goal (c)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
\langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T\llbracket E \rrbracket(em, ew, dw, tw) \\
\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e, ew) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(dw'', e, dw) \\
\wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e, tw) \wedge \\
[ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
\wedge
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) \\
] \\
] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}'', e, \text{dw}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.3})$$

We instantiate soundness statement of E for identifier expression with em as em', expw as x, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as tw'', tw' as tw' and get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{I}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
\langle x, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \mathbf{I} \rrbracket](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\
\Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(x, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', x, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(\text{dw}', x, \text{dw}'') \\
\quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', x, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
\quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, x \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
\quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{I} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\
\quad \quad \wedge \\
\quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \mathbf{I} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
\quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) \\
\quad \quad ] \\
\quad ] \\
] \\
]
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', x, \text{dw}'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.4})$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c7) with em as em, em' as em', I as I, E as E, x as x, e as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew'' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw'' to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{E}) \wedge \\
\langle x:=e, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \mathbf{I}:=\mathbf{E} \rrbracket](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
\langle e, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \mathbf{E} \rrbracket](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, \text{E}) \wedge \\
\langle x, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \mathbf{I} \rrbracket](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
\Rightarrow \\
[ \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', x, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', e, \text{ew}'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \\
x:=e, \text{ew}) ] \wedge \\
[ \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}'', x, \text{dw}) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(\text{dw}', e, \text{dw}') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\
\text{Decl}(\text{dw}', x:=e, \text{dw}) ] \wedge
\end{array}$$





$$\begin{aligned} & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\ & \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', x, tw'') \text{ ----- (b.6)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c7) with  
em as em, em' as em', I as I, E as E, x as x, e as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew', ew''  
as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \\ & \langle x:=e, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I:=E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & \langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \\ & \langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\ & \Rightarrow \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', x, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e, ew'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \\ & \quad x:=e, ew) ] \wedge \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', x, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\ & \quad \text{Decl}(dw', x:=e, dw) ] \wedge \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', x, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e, tw'') \Rightarrow \text{extends-} \\ & \quad \text{Theory}(tw', x:=e, tw) ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (b.5), (b.6) and lemma (L-c7),  
we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', x:=e, tw)$$

which is the goal. Hence (d) proved.

### Sub-Goal (e)

Let t, t', cw, vw be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\langle t, x:=e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \text{ ----- (4)}$$

From (3), we know

$$\langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (5)}$$

From (4) and definition of corresponding Why3 semantics, we know

$$t' = t'' + [x|->vw] \text{ ----- (6)}$$

We define:

$$\begin{aligned}
s &:= \text{constructs}(t) && \text{----- (4.a)} \\
s'' &:= \text{constructs}(t'') && \text{----- (4.b)} \\
s' &:= \text{constructs}(t') && \text{----- (4.c)}
\end{aligned}$$

We show:

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{I} := \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{----- (e.a)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: & \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{I} := \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\
\wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') & \\
\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{void}) & \text{----- (e.b)}
\end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal (e.a)**

We show:

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{equals}(s, t) & \text{----- (e.a.1)} \\
\llbracket \text{I} := \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') & \text{----- (e.a.2)}
\end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal (e.a.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  
s as s, t as t  
to get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t)$$

From assumption (4.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\text{equals}(s, t)$$

which is the goal (e.a.1). Hence (e.a.1) is proved.

**Sub-Goal (e.a.2)**

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{E}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \langle e, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', e, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', e, \text{dw}) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', e, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw})
\end{aligned}$$

]

]

]

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [\forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula with  
t as t, t' as t'', vw as vw  
to get

$$\begin{aligned}
\langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw \rangle \\
\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
\quad \wedge \\
\quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
\quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) ] \\
\quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (5) and above formula, we know

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm)$$

By instantiating above formula with s as s, s' as s'', vm as vm, we know

there is s, s'', vm

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s'', vm) \quad \text{----- (e.a.2.1)}$$

We define:

$$vw = \text{constructs}(vm) \quad \text{----- (e.a.2.2)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c8) with  
x as x, e as e, s' as s', s'' as s'', t' as t', t'' as t'', vw as vw, vm as vm  
to get

$$\begin{aligned}
s' = \text{constructs}(t') \wedge s'' = \text{constructs}(t'') \wedge t' = t'' + [x \mid \rightarrow vw] \wedge vm = \text{constructs}(vw) \\
\Rightarrow s' = \text{update}(x, vm, s'')
\end{aligned}$$

From (4.b), (4.c), (6), (e.a.2.2) and (L-c8), we know

$$s' = \text{update}(x, \text{vm}, s'') \text{ ----- (e.a.2.3)}$$

The definition of semantics of an assignment command (when Iseq and Eseq are EMPTY) follows from (e.a.2.1) and (e.a.2.3).

Hence (e.a) is proved.

**Sub-Goal (e.b)**

Let  $s, s', \text{dm}, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \text{ ----- (7)}$$

$$\llbracket I := E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \text{ ----- (8)}$$

$$\text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \text{ ----- (9)}$$

We define:

$$s' := \text{constructs}(t') \text{ ----- (9.a)}$$

$$\text{vw} := \text{constructs}(\text{dm}) \text{ ----- (9.b)}$$

We show:

$$\text{equals}(s', t') \text{ ----- (e.b.1)}$$

$$\text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{void}) \text{ ----- (e.b.2)}$$

**Sub-Sub-Goal (e.b.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t')$$

From (9.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\text{equals}(s', t')$$

which is the goal (e.b.1). Hence proved.

**Sub-Sub-Goal (e.b.2)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq6) with  $v$  as  $\text{void}$ ,  $v'$  as  $\text{dm}$  to get

$$\text{void} = \text{constructs}(\text{dm}) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{void})$$

From (9.b) and (L-cseq6), we know

$$\text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{void})$$

which is the goal (e.b.2). Hence proved.

Consequently, the goal (e.b) follows from (e.b.1) and (e.b.2). Hence (e.b) is proved.

Finally, the goal (e) follows from goals (e.a) and (e.b).

Also the goal (G22) follows from goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e).

Hence (G22) proved.

### D.2.3 Case 3: $C := \text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}$

The goal (G2) can be re-stated as follows:

$\forall \text{em} \in \text{Environment}, e1, e2 \in \text{Expression}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}, dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}](\text{em}, ew, dw, \\
& tw) \\
\Rightarrow & [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw') \\
& \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) \\
& \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) \\
& \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) \wedge \\
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \wedge [\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}](\text{em})(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \wedge [\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}](\text{em})(s, s') \\
& \quad \quad \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}, s') \\
& \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad ] \\
& ] \\
& ] \quad \text{----- (G23)}
\end{aligned}$$

Let  $\text{em}, e1, e2, ew, ew', dw, dw', tw, tw', dm$  and  $vw$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}) \quad \text{----- (1)} \\
& \text{consistent}(\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (2)} \\
& \langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}](\text{em}, ew, dw, \\
& tw) \quad \text{----- (3)}
\end{aligned}$$

By expanding the definition of (3), we know

$$\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[E](\text{em}, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{----- (3.a)}$$

$$\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (3.a')}$$

$$\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[C\text{seq}](\text{em}', ew'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{----- (3.b)}$$

We show:

$$\text{wellTyped}(\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw') \quad \text{----- (a)}$$

$$\text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) \quad \text{----- (b)}$$

$$\text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) \quad \text{----- (c)}$$

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) \quad \text{----- (d)}$$

$$\forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\Rightarrow & [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \wedge [\mathbf{\text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq } \text{end}}](\text{em})(s, s') ]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{l}
\wedge \\
[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
\quad \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\
\quad \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}, s') \\
\quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
] \quad \text{----- (e)}
\end{array}$$

**Sub-Goal (a)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c1) with  
 $c$  as  $\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}$ ,  $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}$ ,  $e$  as  $\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}$ ,  $\text{ew}'$  as  
 $\text{ew}'$ ,  $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  $\text{dw}'$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}$ ,  $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}'$   
and get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}) \\
\wedge (\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = T\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end} \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
\Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}')
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (1), (3) and (L-c1), we know

$$\text{wellTyped}(\text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}')$$

which is the goal (a). Hence (a) proved.

**Sub-Goal (b)**

We instantiate lemma (L-c9) with  
 $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}$ ,  $\text{em}'$  as  $\text{em}'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $\text{Cseq}$  as  $\text{Cseq}$   
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}) \Rightarrow \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq})
\end{array}$$

From (1) and (L-c9), we know

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a)} \\
\text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \quad \text{----- (1.a')} \\
\text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq}) \quad \text{----- (1.b)}
\end{array}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c10) with  
 $\text{em}$  as  $\text{em}$ ,  $\text{em}'$  as  $\text{em}'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $\text{Cseq}$  as  $\text{Cseq}$ ,  $\text{ew}$  as  $\text{ew}$ ,  $\text{ew}'$  as  $\text{ew}'$ ,  $\text{ew}''$  as  $\text{ew}''$ ,  
 $\text{dw}$  as  $\text{dw}$ ,  $\text{dw}'$  as  $\text{dw}'$ ,  $\text{dw}''$  as  $\text{dw}''$ ,  $\text{tw}$  as  $\text{tw}$ ,  $\text{tw}'$  as  $\text{tw}'$ ,  $\text{tw}''$  as  $\text{tw}''$   
to get

$$\begin{array}{l}
(e1, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') = T\llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \\
(e2, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = T\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \\
\text{tw}) \\
\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{dw}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'')
\end{array}$$

From assumptions (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (2) and (L-c10), we know



$$\text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \text{ ----- (2.a)}$$

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{E}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\ & \langle \text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\ & \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\ & \text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \\ & \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{E} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\ & \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we  
know

$$\text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \text{ ----- (b.1)}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq with  
em as em' cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ & \langle \text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \text{T}[\llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\ & \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e2}, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\ & \text{Decl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \\ & \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e2}, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t', \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\ & \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\ & \quad \quad \wedge \\ & \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\ & \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\ & \quad \quad ] \\ & \quad ] \\ & ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we  
know

extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'') ----- (b.2)

We instantiate lemma (L-c11) with  
em as em, E as E, Cseq as Cseq, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, ew as ew, ew', ew'', ew'',  
dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

wellTyped(em, while E do Cseq end)  $\wedge$   
 $\langle$ while e1 do e2, ew', dw', tw' $\rangle = T[\![\text{while E do Cseq end}]\!](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\wedge$   
 $\langle$ e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' $\rangle = T[\![E]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $em' = Env(em, E) \wedge$   
 $\langle$ e2, ew', dw', tw' $\rangle = T[\![Cseq]\!](em', ew'', dw'', tw'')$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $[$  extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew)  $\wedge$  extendsEnv(ew', e2, ew'')  
 $\Rightarrow$  extendsEnv(ew', while e1 do e2, ew)  $]$   $\wedge$   
 $[$  extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw)  $\wedge$  extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'')  
 $\Rightarrow$  extendsDecl(dw', while e1 do e2, dw)  $]$   $\wedge$   
 $[$  extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw)  $\wedge$  extendsTheory(tw', e2, tw'')  
 $\Rightarrow$  extendsTheory(tw', while e1 do e2, tw)  $]$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (b.1), (b.2) and lemma (L-c11), we know

extendsEnv(ew', while e1 do e2, ew)

which is the goal. Hence (b) proved.

### Sub-Goal (c)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

wellTyped(em, E)  $\wedge$  consistent(em, ew, dw, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $\langle$ e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' $\rangle = T[\![E]\!](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow [$  wellTyped(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'')  $\wedge$  extendsEnv(ew'', e1, ew)  $\wedge$  extends-  
Decl(dw'', e1, dw)  
 $\wedge$  extendsTheory(tw'', e1, tw)  $\wedge$   
 $[ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
 $\Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [\![E]\!](em)(s, s', vm) ]$   
 $\wedge$   
 $[ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [\![E]\!](em)(s, s', vm)$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw)$   
 $]$   
 $]$   
 $]$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

extendsDecl(dw'', e1, dw) ----- (b.3)

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq with  
em as em', cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em', \text{Cseq}) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{Cseq}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(dw', e2, dw'') \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(em')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we  
know

extendsDecl(dw', e2, dw'') ----- (b.4)

We instantiate lemma (L-c11) with  
em as em, E as E, Cseq as Cseq, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, ew as ew, ew', ew'', ew'',  
dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[E](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\text{Cseq}](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
& \Rightarrow \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) ] \wedge \\
& \quad [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (b.3), (b.4) and lemma (L-  
c11), we know

extendsDecl(dw', while e1 do e2, dw)

which is the goal. Hence (c) proved.

**Sub-Goal (d)**

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\
& \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(dw'', e1, dw) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[E]](em)(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{b.5})$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq with  
em as em' cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as  
tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq) \wedge \text{consistent}(em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \\
& \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[Cseq]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e2, ew', dw', tw') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(dw', e2, dw'') \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge [[Cseq]](em')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge [[Cseq]](em')(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2.a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \text{ ----- (b.6)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c11) with  
em as em, E as E, Cseq as Cseq, e1 as e1, e2 as e2, ew as ew, ew', ew'', ew'',  
dw as dw, dw' as dw', dw'' as dw'', tw as tw, tw' as tw', tw'' as tw''  
to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}) \wedge \\ & \langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\![\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \wedge \\ & \langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[\![E]\!](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge \\ & em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \\ & \langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[\![Cseq]\!](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \\ & \Rightarrow \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) ] \wedge \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) ] \wedge \\ & \quad [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) ] \end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1), (3), (3.a), (3.a'), (3.b), (b.5), (b.6) and lemma (L-c11), we know

$$\text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw)$$

which is the goal. Hence (d) proved.

### Sub-Goal (e)

Let t, t', cw, vw be arbitrary but fixed s.t.

We assume:

$$\langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ ----- (4)}$$

We show:

$$\text{----- (e.a)} \quad [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}\!](em)(s, s') ] \text{ -----}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end}\!](em)(s, \\ & s') \\ & \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) ] \text{ ----- (e.b)} \end{aligned}$$

The semantics of the classical Why3 while-loop is defined by a complex exception-handling mechanism. Based on the aforementioned semantics, a proof

of this goal gets more complicated, thus to avoid this complication, we have derived (in the Appendix - Derivations) two rules conforming the definition of while-loop semantics which do not involve exceptions anymore. These two derivations are as follows:

$$\frac{\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{false} \rangle}{\langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle} \text{----- (d.a)}$$

$$\frac{\begin{array}{l} \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \\ \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', \text{void} \rangle \\ \langle t''', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \end{array}}{\langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle} \text{----- (d.b)}$$

We prove this goal (e) by rule induction on the operational semantics of while-loop which is defined above by the two derivation rules (d.a) and (d.b). By the strategy of principle of rule induction for while-loop, the goal (e) can be re-formulated as:

$$\forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \Rightarrow \mathbb{P}(t, t', vw) \text{----- (G-e)}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{P}(t, t', vw) : \Leftrightarrow & \\ & [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{seq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \\ & \wedge [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \\ & \quad \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{seq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, vw) ] \end{aligned}$$

where E, Cseq and em are fixed as defined above ----- (D-p)

To show (G-e), based on the principle of rule induction it suffices to show the followings for while-loop for the corresponding derivation rules respectively:

$$\forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}, e1 \in \text{Expressionw}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{false} \rangle \Rightarrow \mathbb{P}(t, t', vw) \text{----- (G-e.1)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \forall t, t', t'', t''' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}, e1, e2 \in \text{Expressionw}: \\ \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \wedge \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', \text{void} \rangle \\ \wedge \langle t''', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \wedge \mathbb{P}(t''', t', \text{void}) \Rightarrow \mathbb{P}(t, t', vw) \\ \text{----- (G-e.2)} \end{aligned}$$

### Goal (G-e.1):

We assume:

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{false} \rangle \text{----- (5)}$$

We show:

$\mathbb{P}(t, t', vw)$

By expanding the definition of  $\mathbb{P}(t, t', vw)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} & [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \text{ ----- (G-} \\ \text{e.1.a)} & \wedge [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\ & \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\ & \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, vw) ] \text{ ----- (G-e.1.b)} \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.1.a)

We show:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{equals}(s, t) \text{ ----- (G-e.1.a.1)} \\ & \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C\text{seq end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \text{ ----- (G-e.1.a.2)} \end{aligned}$$

We define:

$$\begin{aligned} s & := \text{constructs}(t) \text{ ----- (5.a)} \\ s' & := \text{constructs}(t') \text{ ----- (5.b)} \\ \text{inValue}(\text{False}) & := \text{constructs}(\text{false}) \text{ ----- (5.c)} \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.1.a.1)

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  
s as s, t as t  
to get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t)$$

From assumption (5.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\text{equals}(s, t)$$

which is the goal (G-e.1.a.1). Hence (G-e.1.a.1) is proved.

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.1.a.2)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''  
and get

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, E) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\ & \langle e1, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[E](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\ & \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(e1, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', e1, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\ & \text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', e1, \text{dw}) \\ & \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', e1, \text{tw}) \wedge \\ & \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, vw \in \text{Value}: \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate above formula with  
t as t, t' as t', vw as false to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{false} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(vm, vw) ] \\
& \quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (5) and above formula,

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}, vm \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', vm)$$

Taking s as s, s' as s', vm as inValue(False) with above formula, we know from (5.a), (5.b), (5.c) and (3.a) that

there is s, s', inValue(False) and E for which

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{inValue}(\text{False})) \text{ ----- (G-e.1.a.2.1)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c12) with  
em as em, E as E, Cseq as Cseq, s as s and s' as s' to get

$$\llbracket E \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s', \text{inValue}(\text{False})) \Rightarrow \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s')$$

The goal (G-e.1.a.2) follows from assumption (G-e.1.a.2.1) and lemma (L-c12).

Consequently, the goal (G-e.1.a) follows from (G-e.1.a.1) and (G-e.1.a.2). Hence (G-e.1.a) is proved.



**Sub-Goal (G-e.1.b)**

Let  $s, s', dm, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{equals}(s,t) & \text{-----} (6) \\ \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{seq end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s,s') & \text{-----} (7) \\ dm = \text{infoData}(s') & \text{-----} (8) \end{aligned}$$

We show:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{equals}(s', t') & \text{-----} (G-e.1.b.1) \\ \text{equals}(dm, vw) & \text{-----} (G-e.1.b.2) \\ vw := \text{constructs}(dm) & \text{-----} (7.a) \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal (G-e.1.b.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s'$  and  $t$  as  $t'$  to get

$$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t')$$

From (5.b) and (L-cseq5), we know

$\text{equals}(s', t')$  which is the goal (G-e.1.b.1). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (G-e.1.b.2)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq6) with  $v$  as  $vw$ ,  $v'$  as  $dm$  to get

$$vw = \text{constructs}(dm) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(dm, vw)$$

From (7.a) and (L-cseq6), we know

$$\text{equals}(dm, vw)$$

which is the goal (G-e.1.b.2). Hence proved.

Consequently, the goal (G-e.1.b) follows from (G-e.1.b.1) and (G-e.1.b.2). Hence (G-e.1.b) is proved.

Finally, the goal (G-e.1) follows from goals (G-e.1.a) and (G-e.1.b).

**Goal (G-e.2):**

We assume:

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \quad \text{-----} \quad (8)$$

$$\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', \text{void} \rangle \quad \text{-----} \quad (9)$$

$$\langle t''', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \quad \text{-----} \quad (10)$$

$$\mathbb{P}(t''', t', \text{void}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (11)$$

We show:

$$\mathbb{P}(t, t', \text{vw})$$

By expanding the definition of  $\mathbb{P}(t, t', \text{vw})$ , we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{G-e.2.a})$$

$$\wedge [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') \\ \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\ \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) ] \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{G-e.2.b})$$

We define:

$$s := \text{constructs}(t) \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.a)$$

$$s'' := \text{constructs}(t'') \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.b)$$

$$s''' := \text{constructs}(t''') \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.c)$$

$$\text{inValue}(\text{True}) := \text{constructs}(\text{true}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.d)$$

$$\text{inValue}(\text{Void}) := \text{constructs}(\text{void}) \quad \text{-----} \quad (9.e)$$

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.2.a)

We show:

$$\text{equals}(s, t) \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{G-e.2.a.1})$$

$$\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s, s') ] \quad \text{-----} \quad (\text{G-e.2.a.2})$$

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.2.a.1)

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  
s as s, t as t  
to get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s, t)$$

From assumption (9.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$$\text{equals}(s, t)$$

which is the goal (G-e.2.a.1). Hence (G-e.2.a.1) is proved.

**Sub-Goal** (G-e.2.a.2)

We instantiate soundness statement of E with  
em as em, expw as e1, ew as ew, ew' as ew'', dw as dw, dw' as dw'', tw as  
tw, tw' as tw''

and get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}, \text{E}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \langle \text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'' \rangle = \text{T}[\![\text{E}]\!](\text{em}, \text{ew}, \text{dw}, \text{tw}) \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e1}, \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}'', \text{e1}, \text{ew}) \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(\text{dw}'', \text{e1}, \text{dw}) \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}'', \text{e1}, \text{tw}) \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.a), (2), (3.a) and the soundness statement of E, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{State}, \text{vw} \in \text{Value}: \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{vw}) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate above formula with  
t as t, t' as t'', vw as true to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \langle t, \text{e1} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \\
& \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) ] \\
& \quad \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm}) \\
& \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{vm}, \text{true}) \\
& \quad ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (8), we know

$$\exists s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{vm} \in \text{Value}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s', \text{vm})$$

Taking s as s, s' as s'', vm as inValue(True) with above formula, we know from (9.a), (9.c), (9.d) and (3.a) that

there is s, s'', inValue(True) and E, for which

$$\![\text{E}]\!(\text{em})(s, s'', \text{inValue}(\text{True})) \text{ ----- (G-e.2.a.2.1)}$$

We instantiate the soundness statement of Cseq with

em as em', cw as e2, ew as ew'', ew' as ew', dw as dw'', dw' as dw', tw as tw'', tw' as tw'

to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{wellTyped}(\text{em}', \text{Cseq}) \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
& \langle \text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\text{Cseq}](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \\
& \Rightarrow [ \text{wellTyped}(\text{e2}, \text{ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(\text{ew}', \text{e2}, \text{ew}'') \wedge \text{extends-} \\
& \text{Decl}(\text{dw}', \text{e2}, \text{dw}'') \\
& \quad \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(\text{tw}', \text{e2}, \text{tw}'') \wedge \\
& \quad [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, \text{vw} \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumptions (1.b), (2a), (3.b) and soundness statement of Cseq, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t, t' \in \text{Statew}, \text{vw} \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t, \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{vw} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

We instantiate the above formula with t as t'', t' as t''', vw as void to get

$$\begin{aligned}
& [ \forall t'', t''' \in \text{Statew}, \text{void} \in \text{Valuew}: \langle t'', \text{e2} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t''', \text{void} \rangle \\
& \quad \Rightarrow [ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ] \\
& \quad \quad \wedge \\
& \quad \quad [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, \text{dm} \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s, t) \\
& \quad \quad \quad \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') \wedge \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') \\
& \quad \quad \quad \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) \\
& \quad \quad ] \\
& ]
\end{aligned}$$

From assumption (9) and above formula we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t) \wedge \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket(\text{em}')(s, s') ]$$

Taking s as s'', s' as s''' in the above formula, we know from (9.b), (9.c), (1.a') and (3.b) that

there is  $s''$ ,  $s'''$ ,  $em'$  and  $Cseq$  s.t.

$$\llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s'', s''') \text{ ----- (G-e.2.a.2.2)}$$

By expanding (11), we get

$$[ \exists s, s' \in \text{State}: \text{equals}(s, t''') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') ] \text{ ----- (12)}$$

$$\wedge [ \forall s, s' \in \text{State}, dm \in \text{InfoData}: \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \wedge dm = \text{infoData}(s') \Rightarrow \text{equals}(s', t') \wedge \text{equals}(dm, \text{void}) ] \text{ ----- (13)}$$

From (12), we know there is  $s, s'$

$$\text{equals}(s, t''') \text{ ----- (12.a)}$$

$$\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \text{ ----- (12.b)}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $t$  as  $t'''$  to get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t''') \Leftrightarrow \text{equals}(s, t''')$$

From (12.a) and lemma (L-cseq5), we get

$$s = \text{constructs}(t''') \text{ ----- (12.c)}$$

From (12.c) and (9.b), we can rewrite (12.a) and (12.b) as

$$\text{equals}(s''', t''') \text{ ----- (12.a')}$$

$$\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \rrbracket(em)(s''', s') \text{ ----- (12.b')}$$

We instantiate lemma (L-c13) with  $em$  as  $em$ ,  $em'$  as  $em'$ ,  $E$  as  $E$ ,  $Cseq$  as  $Cseq$ ,  $s$  as  $s$ ,  $s'$  as  $s'$ ,  $s''$  as  $s''$ ,  $s'''$  as  $s'''$  to get

$$\begin{aligned} & \llbracket E \rrbracket(em)(s, s'', \text{inValue}(\text{True})) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \llbracket Cseq \rrbracket(em')(s'', s''') \\ & \wedge \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end} \rrbracket(em)(s''', s') \\ & \Rightarrow \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end} \rrbracket(em)(s, s') \end{aligned}$$

The goal (G-e.2.a.2) follows from assumptions (G-e.2.a.2.1), (1.a'), (G-e.2.a.2.2), (12.b') and lemma (L-c13).

Consequently (G-e.2.a) follows from the proofs of (G-e.2.a.1) and (G-e.2.a.2).

### Sub-Goal (G-e.2.b)

Let  $s, s', dm, t$  be arbitrary but fixed.

We assume:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{equals}(s,t) & \text{-----} (13) \\ \llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do } C \text{seq end} \rrbracket(\text{em})(s,s') & \text{-----} (14) \\ \text{dm} = \text{infoData}(s') & \text{-----} (15) \end{aligned}$$

We show:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{equals}(s', t') & \text{-----} (G\text{-e.2.b.1}) \\ \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw}) & \text{-----} (G\text{-e.2.b.2}) \end{aligned}$$

We define:

$$\begin{aligned} s' := \text{constructs}(t') & \text{-----} (14.a) \\ \text{vw} := \text{constructs}(\text{dm}) & \text{-----} (14.b) \end{aligned}$$

**Sub-Goal (G-e.2.b.1)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq5) with  
s as s' and t as t'  
to get

$$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \Leftrightarrow \text{equals}(s', t')$$

From (14.a) and (L-cseq5), we know

$\text{equals}(s', t')$  which is the goal (G-e.2.b.1). Hence proved.

**Sub-Goal (G-e.2.b.2)**

We instantiate lemma (L-cseq6) with  
v as vw, v' as dm  
to get

$$\text{vw} = \text{constructs}(\text{dm}) \Rightarrow \text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw})$$

From (12.b) and (L-cseq6), we know

$$\text{equals}(\text{dm}, \text{vw})$$

which is the goal (G-e.2.b.2). Hence proved.

Consequently, the goal (G-e.2.b) follows from (G-e.2.b.1) and (G-e.2.b.2).  
Finally, the goal (e) follows from the proofs of goals (G-e.a) and (G-e.b).

Also the goal (G23) follows from the proofs of goals (a), (b), (c), (d) and  
(e).

Hence (G23) proved.

## E Lemmas

### E.1 For Command\_Sequence

:

**Lemma cseq1:**

$\forall$  cseq  $\in$  Command\_Sequence, em  $\in$  Environment, e  $\in$  Expressionw, ew, ew'  $\in$  Environmentw, dw, dw'  $\in$  Declw, tw, tw'  $\in$  Theoryw:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(em, \text{cseq}) \wedge (e, ew', dw', tw') = T[\text{cseq}](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(e, ew', dw', tw') \text{ ----- (L-cseq1)} \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma cseq2:**

$\forall$  em  $\in$  Environment, C  $\in$  Command, Cseq  $\in$  Command\_Sequence, ew, ew', ew''  $\in$  Environmentw, e1, e2  $\in$  Expressionw, dw, dw', dw''  $\in$  Declw, tw, tw', tw''  $\in$  Theoryw:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(em, C;Cseq) \wedge (e1;e2, ew', dw', tw') = T[C;Cseq](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow \\ [ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e1;e2, ew) ] \wedge \\ [ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e1;e2, dw) ] \wedge \\ [ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e1;e2, tw) ] \\ \text{----- (L-cseq2)} \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma cseq3:**

$\forall$  em, em'  $\in$  Environment, C  $\in$  Command, Cseq  $\in$  Command\_Sequence:  
wellTyped(em, C;Cseq)  $\Rightarrow$  wellTyped(em, C)  $\wedge$  em' = Env(em, C)  $\wedge$  wellTyped(em', Cseq)

$$\text{----- (L-cseq3)}$$

**Lemma cseq4:**

$\forall$  em, em'  $\in$  Environment, C  $\in$  Command, Cseq  $\in$  Command\_Sequence, ew, ew', ew''  $\in$  Environmentw, e1, e2  $\in$  Expressionw, dw, dw', dw''  $\in$  Declw, tw, tw', tw''  $\in$  Theoryw:

$$\begin{aligned} (e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') = T[C](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, C) \wedge \\ (e2, ew', dw', tw') = T[Cseq](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', dw'', dw'', tw'') \text{ ----- (L-cseq4)} \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma cseq5:**

$\forall$  s  $\in$  State, t  $\in$  Statew: s = constructs(t)  $\Leftrightarrow$  equals(s,t) -----  
---- (L-cseq5)

**Lemma cseq6:**

$\forall v \in \text{Value}, v' \in \text{InfoData}: v' = \text{constructs}(v) \Leftrightarrow \text{equals}(v', v)$  -----  
 -----(L-cseq6)

**E.2 For Command**

:

**Lemma c1:**

$\forall c \in \text{Command}, em \in \text{Environment}, e \in \text{Expression}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environment}, dw, dw' \in \text{Decl}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theory}$ :

$\text{wellTyped}(em, c) \wedge (e, ew', dw', tw') = \mathbb{T}[c](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(e, ew', dw', tw')$  ----- (L-c1)

**Lemma c2:**

$\forall em \in \text{Environment}, C \in \text{Command}, Cseq \in \text{Command\_Sequence},$   
 $ew, ew', ew'', ew''' \in \text{Environment}, e1, e2, e3 \in \text{Expression}, dw, dw',$   
 $dw'', dw''' \in \text{Decl}, tw, tw', tw'', tw''' \in \text{Theory}$ :

$\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}) \wedge$   
 $\langle \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[\text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2$   
 $\text{end}](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $\langle e1, ew''', dw''', tw''' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[E](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge$   
 $\langle e2, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[Cseq1](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge$   
 $\langle e3, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = \mathbb{T}[Cseq2](em', ew', dw', tw') \wedge$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $[ \text{extendsEnv}(ew''', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e2, ew'') \wedge \text{extends}$   
 $\text{sEnv}(ew', e3, ew'')$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsDecl}(dw''', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e2, dw'') \wedge \text{extends}$   
 $\text{Decl}(dw', e3, dw'')$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, dw) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsTheory}(tw''', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e2, tw'') \wedge \text{extends}$   
 $\text{sTheory}(tw', e3, tw'')$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, tw) ]$   
 ----- (L-c2)

**Lemma c3:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, Cseq1, Cseq2 \in \text{Command\_Sequence}$ :  
 $\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}) \Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge em'$   
 $= \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq1) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(em, Cseq2)$   
 ----- (L-c3)

**Lemma c4:**



$\text{ment } c\forall \text{ em, em}' \in \text{Environment, E} \in \text{Expression, Cseq1, Cseq2} \in \text{Command\_Sequence,}$   
 $\text{ew, ew}', \text{ew}'', \text{ew}''' \in \text{Environmentw, e1, e2, e3} \in \text{Expressionw, dw, dw}',$   
 $\text{dw}'', \text{dw}''' \in \text{Declw, tw, tw}', \text{tw}'', \text{tw}''' \in \text{Theoryw:}$   
 $(\text{e1, ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') = \text{T}[\text{E}](\text{em, ew, dw, tw}) \wedge \text{em}' = \text{Env}(\text{em, E}) \wedge$   
 $(\text{e2, ew}''', \text{dw}''', \text{tw}''') = \text{T}[\text{Cseq1}](\text{em}', \text{ew}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge$   
 $(\text{e3, ew}', \text{dw}', \text{tw}') = \text{T}[\text{Cseq2}](\text{em, ew}''', \text{dw}''', \text{tw}''') \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em, ew,}$   
 $\text{dw, tw})$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(\text{em}', \text{dw}'', \text{dw}'', \text{tw}'') \wedge \text{consistent}(\text{em, ew}''', \text{dw}''', \text{tw}''')$   
----- (L-c4)

**Lemma c5:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, I \in \text{Identifier}, E \in \text{Expression}$ :  
 $\text{wellTyped}(em, I:=E) \Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(em', I)$   
 ----- (L-c5)

**Lemma c6:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, I \in \text{Identifier}, E \in \text{Expression}, ew, ew', ew'' \in \text{Environmentw}, x, e \in \text{Expressionw}, dw, dw', dw'' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw', tw'' \in \text{Theoryw}$ :

$(e, ew'', dw'', tw'') = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge$   
 $(x, ew', dw', tw') = T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', dw'', dw'', tw'')$   
 ----- (L-c6)

**Lemma c7:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, I \in \text{Identifier}, E \in \text{Expression}, ew, ew', ew'' \in \text{Environmentw}, x, e \in \text{Expressionw}, dw, dw', dw'' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw', tw'' \in \text{Theoryw}$ :

$\text{wellTyped}(em, I:=E) \wedge$   
 $\langle x:=e, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I:=E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $\langle e, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge$   
 $\langle x, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[I]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'')$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $[ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', x, ew'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', x:=e, ew) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', x, dw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', x:=e, dw) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', x, tw'') \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', x:=e, tw) ]$   
 ----- (L-c7)

**Lemma c8:**

$\forall x \in \text{Identifier}, s', s'' \in \text{State}, t', t'' \in \text{Statew}, vw \in \text{Valuew}, vm \in \text{Value}$ :

$s' = \text{constructs}(t') \wedge s'' = \text{constructs}(t'') \wedge t' = t'' + [x \rightarrow vw] \wedge vm = \text{constructs}(vw)$   
 $\Rightarrow s' = \text{update}(x, vm, s'')$  ----- (L-c8)

**Lemma c9:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, Cseq \in \text{Command\_Sequence}$ :

$\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do } Cseq \text{ end})$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge \text{wellTyped}(em', Cseq)$  -----  
 ----- (L-c9)

**Lemma c10:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, \text{Cseq} \in \text{Command\_Sequence},$   
 $ew, ew', ew'' \in \text{Environmentw}, e1, e2 \in \text{Expressionw}, dw, dw', dw'' \in \text{Declw},$   
 $tw, tw', tw'' \in \text{Theoryw}:$   
 $(e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge$   
 $(e2, ew''', dw''', tw''') = T[[Cseq]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \wedge \text{consistent}(em, ew,$   
 $dw, tw)$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{consistent}(em', dw'', dw'', tw'') \quad \text{----- (L-c10)}$

**Lemma c11:**

$\forall em \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, \text{Cseq} \in \text{Command\_Sequence},$   
 $ew, ew', ew'' \in \text{Environmentw}, e1, e2 \in \text{Expressionw}, dw, dw', dw'' \in \text{Declw},$   
 $tw, tw', tw'' \in \text{Theoryw}:$

$\text{wellTyped}(em, \text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end}) \wedge$   
 $\langle \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[\text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end}]](em, ew, dw, tw)$   
 $\wedge$   
 $\langle e1, ew'', dw'', tw'' \rangle = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \wedge$   
 $em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge$   
 $\langle e2, ew', dw', tw' \rangle = T[[Cseq]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'')$   
 $\Rightarrow$   
 $[ \text{extendsEnv}(ew'', e1, ew) \wedge \text{extendsEnv}(ew', e2, ew'')$   
 $\quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsEnv}(ew', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, ew) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsDecl}(dw'', e1, dw) \wedge \text{extendsDecl}(dw', e2, dw'')$   
 $\quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsDecl}(dw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, dw) ] \wedge$   
 $[ \text{extendsTheory}(tw'', e1, tw) \wedge \text{extendsTheory}(tw', e2, tw'')$   
 $\quad \Rightarrow \text{extendsTheory}(tw', \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2, tw) ]$   
 $\text{----- (L-c11)}$

**Lemma c12:**

$\forall em \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, \text{Cseq} \in \text{Command\_Sequence}, s, s' \in$   
 $\text{State}:$

$[[E]](em)(s, s', \text{inValue}(\text{False})) \Rightarrow [[\text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end}]](em)(s, s') \quad \text{-----}$   
 $\text{----- (L-c12)}$

**Lemma c13:**

$\forall em, em' \in \text{Environment}, E \in \text{Expression}, \text{Cseq} \in \text{Command\_Sequence},$   
 $s, s', s'', s''' \in \text{State}:$

$[[E]](em)(s, s', \text{inValue}(\text{True})) \wedge em' = \text{Env}(em, E) \wedge [[\text{Cseq}]](em')(s'', s''')$   
 $\wedge [[\text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end}]](em)(s'', s')$   
 $\Rightarrow [[\text{while } E \text{ do } \text{Cseq} \text{ end}]](em)(s, s') \quad \text{----- (L-c13)}$

### E.3 For Expression

:

#### Lemma e1:

$\forall E \in \text{Expression}, em \in \text{Environment}, e \in \text{Expressionw}, ew, ew' \in \text{Environmentw}, dw, dw' \in \text{Declw}, tw, tw' \in \text{Theoryw}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{wellTyped}(em, E) \wedge (e, ew', dw', tw') = T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ \Rightarrow \text{wellTyped}(e, ew', dw', tw') \text{ ----- (L-e1)} \end{aligned}$$

## E.4 Auxiliary Lemmas

:

### Lemma a1:

Suppose,  
there exists a derivation of  
 $\langle t''', \text{try loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit with Exit } \_ \rightarrow \text{void end} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle$  ----- (a)

then there exists a derivation of  
 $\langle t''', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{Exit } c \rangle$  ----- (G)

Given (a), we can derive (G) only by one rule (try-1). ----- (L-a1)

### Proof:

As we have three rules that can be applied to (a), so we prove by case analysis on these rules.

#### Case 1: rule (try-1)

From rule (try-1), we know that

(a) holds only if derivations of

$$\begin{aligned} \langle t''', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle t', \text{Exit } c \rangle \\ \langle t', \text{void} \rangle &\longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle \end{aligned}$$

holds. Thus (G) can directly be obtained as above.

#### Case 2: rule (try-2)

It can also not be used to derive (G). We prove here by induction on number of iterations.

Suppose  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  is the number of loop iteration:

We start for 0 iteration, when  $n = 0$

By the application of rule (try-2), we know that

(a) holds only if derivation of

$$\langle t''', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle$$

holds, which is not (G).

Now suppose, for iteration  $n = n-1^{\text{th}}$ , by the application of rule (try-2), we know that

(a) holds only if derivation of

$\langle t''', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t_{n-1}, \text{void} \rangle$  for some  $t_{n-1}$   
holds, which is again not the same as (G).

Now assume the rule application above for  $n = n-1$ , we prove it does not hold for  $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{n}$ . Now at  $n$ th iteration, by the application of rule (try-2), we know that

(a) holds only if derivation of

$\langle t''', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t_n, \text{void} \rangle$  for some  $t_n$

holds, which is different than (G).

As we saw by induction above that (G) cannot be derived by rule (try-2). Hence rule (try-2) is also not applicable.

**Case 3: rule (try-3)**

(G) can clearly not be derived by rule (try-3) as this rule has conclusion, whose derivation has the consequence with non-exception value, i.e.  $\langle t', E' c \rangle$ , while our assumption has non-exception value, i.e.  $\langle t', \text{void} \rangle$ .

Hence, we have proved that the only possible derivation of (G) from (1) is by rule (try-1).

## F Definitions

**Definition 1:**

$$(cw, ew', dw', tw') = T[[cseq]](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (D1)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} ew' &= \text{extends}(ew, cw) \\ dw' &= \text{extends}(dw, cw) \\ tw' &= \text{extends}(tw, cw) \end{aligned}$$

**Definition 2:**

$$(e1;e2, ew', dw', tw') = T[[c;cseq]](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (D2)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} (e1, ew'', dw'', tw'') &= T[[c]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ em' &= \text{Env}(em, C) \\ (e2, ew', dw', tw') &= T[[cseq]](em', ew'', dw'', tw'') \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} ew'' &= \text{extends}(ew, e1) \\ ew' &= \text{extends}(ew'', e2) \\ dw'' &= \text{extends}(dw, e1) \\ dw' &= \text{extends}(dw'', e2) \\ tw'' &= \text{extends}(tw, e1) \\ tw' &= \text{extends}(tw'', e2) \end{aligned}$$

and  $e1;e2$  is a syntactic sugar for  $\text{let } \_ = e1 \text{ in } e2$

**Definition 3:**

$$\begin{array}{c} \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle, vw' \text{ is not exception} \quad \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \text{-----} \\ \langle t, e1;e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \\ \text{-----} \quad (D3) \end{array}$$

where  $e1;e2$  is a syntactic sugar for  $\text{let } \_ = e1 \text{ in } e2$

**Definition 4:**

$$(\text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3, ew', dw', tw') = T[[\text{if } E \text{ then } Cseq1 \text{ else } Cseq2 \text{ end}]](em, ew, dw, tw) \quad \text{-----} \quad (D4)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} (e1, ew''', dw''', tw''') &= T[[E]](em, ew, dw, tw) \\ (e2, ew'', dw'', tw'') &= T[[Cseq1]](em, ew''', dw''', tw''') \\ (e3, ew', dw', tw') &= T[[Cseq2]](em, ew''', dw''', tw''') \end{aligned}$$

and  
ew''' = extends(ew, e1)  
ew'' = extends(ew''', e2)  
ew' = extends(ew'', e3)  
dw''' = extends(dw, e1)  
dw'' = extends(dw''', e2)  
dw' = extends(dw'', e3)  
tw''' = extends(tw, e1)  
tw'' = extends(tw''', e2)  
tw' = extends(tw'', e3)

**Definition 5:**

[[if E then Cseq Elif end if]](e)(s,s')  $\Leftrightarrow$   
 $\exists v \in \text{ValueU}, s'' \in \text{StateU}: \llbracket E \rrbracket(e)(s,s'',v)$  AND  
cases v of  
  isUndefined()  $\rightarrow s' = \text{inError}()$   
  [] isValue(v1)  
   $\rightarrow$  cases s'' of  
  isError()  $\rightarrow s' = \text{inError}()$   
  [] isState(p)  
   $\rightarrow$  cases v1 of  
  isBoolean(v2)  $\rightarrow$  IF v2 THEN [[Cseq]](e)(p,s')  
  ELSE  $\exists v' \in \text{Tr}, p' \in \text{StateU}: \llbracket \text{Elif} \rrbracket(e)(s,p',v')$  AND  
  cases p' of  
  isError()  $\rightarrow s' = \text{inError}()$   
  [] isState(p'')  $\rightarrow$  IF v'=inTr(True) THEN  
  s' = inStateU(p'')  
  ELSE s' = s  
  END  
  END  
  END  
  END  
END ----- (D5)

**Definition 6:**

$\langle t, e1 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle$        $\langle t'', e2 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
-----  
 $\langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
----- (D6)

**Definition 7:**

$\langle t, e1 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t'', \text{false} \rangle$        $\langle t'', e3 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
-----  
 $\langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \rightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
----- (D7)



**Definition 8:**  
*// while loop iterator ...*  
 $\text{iterate} \subset \text{Nat} \times \text{StateU}^* \times \text{StateU}^* \times \text{Environment} \times \text{StateValueRelation} \times \text{StateRelation}$   
 $\text{iterate}(i, t, u, e, E, C) \Leftrightarrow$   
cases  $t(i)$  of  
isError()  $\rightarrow$  false  
 $\square$  isState( $m$ )  $\rightarrow$  executes(data( $m$ )) AND  $\exists v \in \text{ValueU}, s' \in \text{StateU} : E(e)(m, s', v)$   
AND  
cases  $s'$  of  
isError()  $\rightarrow$   $u(i+1)=\text{inError}()$  AND  $t(i+1)=u(i+1)$   
 $\square$  isState( $p$ )  $\rightarrow$   
cases  $v$  of  
isUndefined()  $\rightarrow$   $u(i+1)=\text{inError}()$  AND  $t(i+1)=u(i+1)$   
 $\square$  isValue( $v'$ )  $\rightarrow$  cases  $v'$  of  
isBoolean( $b$ )  $\rightarrow$   $b$  AND LET  $e'=\text{Env}(e, E)$  IN  
 $C(e')(p, u(i+1))$  AND  $t(i+1)=u(i+1)$   
 $\square$  ...  $\rightarrow$   $u(i+1)=\text{inError}()$  AND  $t(i+1)=u(i+1)$   
END //cases- $v'$   
END //cases- $v$   
END //cases- $s'$   
END //cases- $t(i)$

**Definition 9:**  
 $\llbracket \text{while } E \text{ do Cseq end do } \rrbracket(e)(s, s') \Leftrightarrow$   
 $\exists k \in \text{Nat}, t, u \in \text{StateU}^*:$   
 $t(0)=\text{inStateU}(s)$  AND  $u(0)=\text{inStateU}(s)$  AND  
 $(\forall i \in \text{Nat}.k: \text{iterate}(i, t, u, e, \llbracket E \rrbracket, \llbracket \text{Cseq} \rrbracket))$  ) AND  
 $((u(k)=\text{inError}()) \text{ AND } s'=u(k)) \text{ OR } (\text{returns}(\text{data}(\text{inState}(u(k)))) \text{ AND } s'=t(k)) \text{ OR}$   
 $(\exists v \in \text{ValueU}: \llbracket E \rrbracket(e)(\text{inState}(t(k)), u(k), v)$   
AND  $v \neq \text{inValue}(\text{inBoolean}(\text{True}))$  AND  
IF  $v = \text{inValue}(\text{inBoolean}(\text{False}))$  THEN  
 $s'=u(k)$   
ELSE  $s' = \text{inError}()$  END //if- $v$   
)  
)

## G Why3 Semantics

$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', vw' \rangle, vw'$  is not exception  $\langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
-----  
--- (com-s)  
 $\langle t, e1; e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle$   
----- (const)

$$\langle t, c \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t, c \rangle$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{true} \rangle \quad \langle t'', e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}{\text{--- (cond-t)} \quad \langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{false} \rangle \quad \langle t'', e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}{\text{--- (cond-f)} \quad \langle t, \text{if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else } e3 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', \text{void} \rangle \quad \langle t'', \text{loop } e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}{\text{--- (loop-n)} \quad \langle t, \text{loop } e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', E c \rangle}{\text{--- (loop-e)} \quad \langle t, \text{loop } e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', E c \rangle}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', c \rangle}{\text{--- (raise)} \quad \langle t, \text{raise } (E e) \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', E c \rangle}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t'', E c \rangle \quad \langle t'', e2[x \leftarrow c] \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}{\text{--- (try-1)} \quad \langle t, \text{try } e1 \text{ with } E x \rightarrow e2 \text{ end} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}$$

$$\langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle \text{ vw is not exc.}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, \text{try } e1 \text{ with } E x \rightarrow e2 \text{ end} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', vw \rangle}{\text{--- (try-2)} \quad \langle t, e1 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', E' c \rangle \quad E' \langle \rangle E}$$

$$\frac{\langle t, \text{try } e1 \text{ with } E x \rightarrow e2 \text{ end} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', E' c \rangle}{\text{--- (try-3)}}$$

## H Derivations

From the semantics of Why3, we know that the while-loop “while e1 do e2” is a syntactic sugar, which is semantically equivalent to as follows

```

while e1 do e2 ~ try
  loop if e1 then e2 else raise Exit
with Exit _ → void end ----- (4'')

```

and

```

raise Exit ~ raise Exit _ ----- (4''')

```

Now we introduce two new rules for while-loop (d.a) and (d.b), which operates directly on the level of while-loop (without expansion). In the following, we show that these rules follows from the basic rule calculus, i.e. adding these rules does not change the semantics.

### Derivation 1:

```

----- //applying (const)
<t', _> → <t', c> , where c=_
----- //applying (raise)
<t, e1> → <t', false>    <t', raise Exit> → <t', Exit c>
----- //ap-
plying (cond-f)
<t, if e1 then e2 else raise Exit> → <t', Exit c>
----- //applying (loop-e)
<t, loop if e1 then e2 else raise Exit> → <t', Exit c>

----- //applying (const)
<t', void> → <t', void>
----- //rewriting
<t', void[_ ← c]> → <t', void>
----- //ap-
plying (try-1)
<t, try loop if e1 then e2 else raise Exit with Exit _ → void end> → <t',
void>

```

The above derivation is only possible if following holds:

```

<t, e1> → <t', false>
-----
-----
<t, try loop if e1 then e2 else raise Exit with Exit _ → void end> →
<t', void>

```

----- (d1)  
From (4'') and (d1), we get

```

<t, e1> → <t', false>

```



-----  
 -----  
 $\langle t, \text{while } e1 \text{ do } e2 \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle$

----- (d.b)

In order to get rule (d3) from (d2), we need to show that if there exists a derivation of

$\langle t'', \text{try loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit with Exit } \_ \rightarrow \text{void end} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{void} \rangle$  ----- (p.1)

then there also exists a corresponding derivation of

$\langle t'', \text{loop if } e1 \text{ then } e2 \text{ else raise Exit} \rangle \longrightarrow \langle t', \text{Exit } c \rangle$  -----  
 (p.2)

Because, we want to write (d2) instead of (d3) because (d3) respectively (d.b) is a direct definition of while-loop operational semantics.

**Proof:**

The goal (p.2) follows from (p.1) and lemma (L-a1). Based on (d2) and derivation of (p.2), we get (d3). Hence (d2) can be derived from (d3), where (d3) can be rewritten to (d.b).